

Emulex[®] Drivers Version 10.2 for Windows

User Manual

Copyright © 2003-2014 Emulex. All rights reserved worldwide. No part of this document may be reproduced by any means or translated to any electronic medium without the prior written consent of Emulex.

Information furnished by Emulex is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Emulex for its use; or for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent, copyright or related rights of Emulex.

Emulex, the Emulex logo, AutoPilot Installer, AutoPilot Manager, BlockGuard, Connectivity Continuum, Convergenomics, Emulex Connect, Emulex Secure, EZPilot, FibreSpy, HBAnyware, InSpeed, LightPulse, MultiPulse, OneCommand, OneConnect, One Network. One Company., SBOD, SLI, and VEngine are trademarks of Emulex. All other brand or product names referenced herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

Emulex provides this manual "as is" without any warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Emulex may make improvements and changes to the product described in this manual at any time and without any notice. Emulex assumes no responsibility for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties that may result. Periodic changes are made to information contained herein; although these changes will be incorporated into new editions of this manual, Emulex disclaims any undertaking to give notice of such changes.

Emulex, 3333 Susan Street

Costa Mesa, CA 92626

Note: References to OCe11100 series products also apply to OCe11100R series products.

Table of Contents

List of Figures	9
List of Tables	
1. Introduction	
Driver Information	12
Compatibility	12
Operating System Requirements	13
Abbreviations	13
2. Installation	
Driver Installation Options	
OneInstall Installer	
Loading the OneInstall Package	
Driver Kit Installer	19
Loading the Driver Kit	19
AutoPilot Installer	20
Starting Installers from a Command Prompt or Script	21
Running a Software Installation Interactively	21
Option 1: Automatically Run the AutoPilot Installer	
Option 2: Run the AutoPilot Installer Separately	
Hardware-First Installation or Driver Update	
Software-First Installation	
Text-Only Driver Installation	
Unattended Driver Installation	
Option 1: Install the Driver Silently	
Option 2: Run the Driver Kit Installer Separately	
Installation Failure	
Manually Installing or Updating the Emulex Protocol Drivers	
Installing the Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) Driver for the First Time	
Updating the Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) Driver	
Installing or Updating the FC/FCoE Storport Miniport Driver	
Installing or Updating the iSCSI Driver	
Installing or Updating the NIC Driver	
Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2012	
Removing Emulex Driver Kits and Drivers	
Uninstalling Emulex Driver Kits	

Windows Server 2008	
Windows Server 2012	31
Uninstalling the Emulex Drivers	32
Windows Server 2008	
Windows Server 2012	
3. Configuration	34
FC/FCoE Driver Configuration	34
Configuring FC Driver Parameters	
Server Performance with FC Drivers	42
I/O Coalescing	
Performance Testing	
NIC Driver Configuration	
Configuring NIC Driver Options	
Advisory: PowerShell Behavior	
Considerations for Using UMC and NIC	
Configuring Windows Server NIC Driver Parameters	62
Modifying Advanced Properties	
Statistics Property Page	64
Using OCCFG for Windows NIC Driver Options	68
Displaying OCCFG Help	
Selecting an Adapter	70
Configuring Device Parameters	70
Viewing Device Parameters	71
Resetting All Parameters	71
Displaying All Parameters	72
Using Interactive Mode	74
Parameter Help	
Using SR-IOV with Emulex Devices	75
Advisory	
Server BIOS Configuration	
Emulex PXESelect Configuration for SR-IOV	
SR-IOV Server Validation	
Verifying the Driver Version	
Enabling SR-IOV in the Emulex Device	
Hyper-V	
Verifying SR-IOV	
Configuring NVGRE for the OCe14000-series Adapters	
Setup	
Configuration	
Configuring RoCE for the OCe14000-Series Adapters	

Confirming That the RoCE Profile Is Enabled 90 Using SMB Direct with NetworkDirect. 91 Mapping the RoCE-Enabled Client to the Server-Side Storage 92 SMB Multichannel 92 SMB Direct Resource Usage 94 QoS Concepts Related to RoCE 96 Configuring QoS for RoCE 97 Performance Considerations 98 Configuring Multichannel 98 NPar Configuration (Dell Only) 99 Adapter Configuration support 99 NPar Partition Support 99 NPar Considerations 100 Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page 100 Using NParEP 104 Network Driver Performance Tuning. 107 Optimizing Server Hardware and BlOS Configuration 107 Windows Server Network Driver 107 NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2 110 Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO) 111 TCP Offloading (TOE) 112 Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP 115 Interrupt Coalescing 116 Single TCP Connection Performance Settings	Enabling the RoCE Profile on the Client-Side	
Mapping the RoCE-Enabled Client to the Server-Side Storage 92 SMB Mittichannel 92 SMB Direct Resource Usage 94 QoS Concepts Related to RoCE 96 Configuring QoS for RoCE 97 Performance Considerations 98 Configuring Multichannel 98 NPar Configuration (Dell Only) 99 Adapter Configuration 99 NPar Considerations 100 Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page 100 Using NParEP 104 Network Driver Performance Tuning. 107 Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration 107 Windows Server Network Driver 107 NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2 110 Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO) 111 Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP. 115 Interrupt Coalescing. 116 Single TCP Connection Performance Settings 116 Single TCP Connection Performance Settings 119 Coefiguring ISCSI Driver Options 117 Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings 119 Using the Microsoft ISC	Confirming That the RoCE Profile Is Enabled	
SMB Multichannel 92 SMB Direct Resource Usage 94 QoS Concepts Related to RoCE 96 Configuring OoS for RoCE 97 Performance Considerations 98 Configuring Multichannel 98 NPar Configuration (Dell Only) 99 Adapter Configuration 99 NPar Considerations 99 NPar Considerations 90 NPar Considerations 90 NPar Considerations 90 NPar Considerations 90 NPar Considerations 100 Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page 100 Using NParEP 104 Network Driver Performance Tuning. 107 Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration 107 WIMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2 110 Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO) 111 Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic 111 TCP Offloading (TOE) 112 Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP 115 Interrupt Coalescing 115 CPU Binding Considerations	Using SMB Direct with NetworkDirect	
SMB Direct Resource Usage .94 QoS Concepts Related to RoCE .96 Configuring QoS for RoCE .97 Performance Considerations .98 Configuring Multichannel .98 NPar Configuration (Dell Only) .99 Adapter Configuration .99 NPar Considerations .00 Enabling NPar Vising the Multichannel Property Page .100 Using NParEP .104 Network Driver Performance Tuning. .107 Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration .107 NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2 .110 Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO) .111 Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic .111 TCP Offloading (TOE) .112 Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP .115 Interrupt Coalescing .116 Single TCP Connection Performance Settings .116 Single TCP Connection Performance Settings .119 Checksum Multipath I/O Support .120 Windows Multipath I/O Support .120 Windows Multipath I/O Support .120	Mapping the RoCE-Enabled Client to the Server-Side Storage	
QoS Concepts Related to RoCE96Configuring QoS for RoCE97Performance Considerations98Configuring Multichannel98NPar Configuration (Dell Only)99Adapter Configuration99NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring ISCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Logging into a Target Sor Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	SMB Multichannel	
Configuring OoS for RoCE97Performance Considerations98Configuring Multichannel98NPar Configuration (Dell Only)99Adapter Configuration99NPar Partition Support99NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring ISCSI Driver Options117Configuring SCSI Driver Options119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122Logging into Targets for Multipath Support122Logging Into Targets for M	SMB Direct Resource Usage	
Performance Considerations98Configuring Multichannel98NPar Configuration (Dell Only)99Adapter Configuration99NPar Partition Support99NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Using the Microsoft SICSI Initiator Service110Multipath I/O Support120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	QoS Concepts Related to RoCE	
Configuring Multichannel98NPar Configuration (Dell Only)99Adapter Configuration99NPar Partition Support99NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Configuring QoS for RoCE	
NPar Configuration (Dell Only).99Adapter Configuration.99NPar Partition Support.99NPar Considerations.100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page.100Using NParEP.104Network Driver Performance Tuning107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration.107Windows Server Network Driver.107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2.110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO).111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic.111TCP Offloading (TOE).112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing.116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings.116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings.117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings.119Creating Non-Bootable Targets.119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service.119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service.119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service.120Multipath I/O Support.120Multipath Support.120Multipath Support.121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections.122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server.23	Performance Considerations	
Adapter Configuration99NPar Partition Support99NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings119Configuring ISCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath I/O Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Configuring Multichannel	98
NPar Partition Support	NPar Configuration (Dell Only)	
NPar Considerations100Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Adapter Configuration	
Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page100Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	NPar Partition Support	
Using NParEP104Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath L/O Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	NPar Considerations	100
Network Driver Performance Tuning.107Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring ISCSI Driver Options119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122ISCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page	100
Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration107Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Using NParEP	104
Windows Server Network Driver107NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Network Driver Performance Tuning	107
NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2110Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116Single TCP Configuration117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration	107
Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)111Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration 117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath L/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Windows Server Network Driver	107
Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic111TCP Offloading (TOE)112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP115Interrupt Coalescing115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration117 Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2	110
TCP Offloading (TOE).112Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing.115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration117 Configuring iSCSI Driver Options.117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft ISCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Multipath I/O Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for ISCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server.123	Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)	111
Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP.115Interrupt Coalescing.115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration 117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123		
Interrupt Coalescing.115CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration 117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	TCP Offloading (TOE)	112
CPU Binding Considerations116Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116 iSCSI Driver Configuration 117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP	115
Single TCP Connection Performance Settings116iSCSI Driver Configuration117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Interrupt Coalescing	115
iSCSI Driver Configuration117Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	CPU Binding Considerations	116
Configuring iSCSI Driver Options117Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Single TCP Connection Performance Settings	116
Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings119Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	iSCSI Driver Configuration	117
Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Configuring iSCSI Driver Options	117
Creating Non-Bootable Targets119Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service119Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings	119
Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator120Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123		
Windows Multipath I/O Support120Multipath Support120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service	119
Multipath Support.120Logging into Targets for Multipath Support.121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server.123	Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator	120
Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123	Windows Multipath I/O Support	120
Logging into Targets for Multipath Support121Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections122iSCSI Error Handling122Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server123		
iSCSI Error Handling		
iSCSI Error Handling		
Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server		
	0	

4. Troubleshooting	124
General Troubleshooting	124
Troubleshooting the FC/FCoE Driver	
Troubleshooting the Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration	124
Event Trace Messages	
ELS Log Messages (0100-0130)	
Discovery Log Messages (0202-0262)	128
Mailbox Log Messages (0310-0326)	131
INIT Log Messages (0400-0463)	132
FCP Log Messages (0701-0749)	134
Link Log Messages (1302-1306)	137
Tag Messages (1400-1401)	138
NPIV Messages (1800-1899)	139
ELS Messages (1900-1999)	140
Troubleshooting the NIC Drivers	142
Monitoring TCP Offloads	143
TCP Offload Failure	
Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver	
Troubleshooting the Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration	
iSCSI Driver Troubleshooting	
τ, τη	148
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs	148
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log	148 148
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme	148
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry.	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables.	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log	148 148 149 149 149 149 150 155
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information	148 148 149 149 149 149 150 155 155 155
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes	148 148 149 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 157 158
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs	148 148 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 155 157 158 158 158
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs Viewing the NIC Error Log	
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs Viewing the NIC Error Log RoCE Event Log.	148 148 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 155 155 157 158 158 159 159
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables. Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation. Additional Event Log Information Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs Viewing the NIC Error Log RoCE Event Log NIC Event Log	148 148 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 157 158 157 158 159 159 159 159
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables. Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs Viewing the NIC Error Log RoCE Event Log NIC Event Log NIC Event Log NIC Event Log NIC Event Log NIC Event Log NIC Event Log SCSI Error and Event Log	148 148 149 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 157 158 157 158 159 159 159 159 160 164
Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log Severity Scheme Related Driver Parameter: LogError Format of an Error Log Entry Error Codes Tables. Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log Event Log Interpretation. Additional Event Log Information Additional Event Log Information ASC/ASCQ Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes NIC Error and Event Logs Viewing the NIC Error Log RoCE Event Log NIC Event Log	148 149 149 149 149 150 155 155 155 155 155 157 158 159 159 159 159 160 164

Viewing the iSCSI Error Log on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Window Server 2012 R2	8
Appendix B. Configuring iSCSI through DHCP 17	7
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Recommendations	
Vendor-Specific Option 43	
Format of Vendor-Specific Option 4317	
Description of Mandatory and Optional Parameters	
Appendix C. Port Speed Specifications 18	0
Negotiating Speed on a Mezzanine Card18	0
Appendix D. AutoPilot Installer Command Line and	
Configuration File Parameters	1
AParg Driver Kit Parameter and Appending to the APInstall.exe File	1
AutoPilot Installer Syntax18	2
Path Specifiers	2
Configuration File Location18	3
Software Configuration Parameters 18	3
DiagEnable (Running Diagnostics) 18	3
ForceDriverTypeChange (Forcing a Driver Type Change)	13
ForceDriverUpdate (Forcing a Driver Version Update)	
ForceRegUpdate (Forcing an Update of an Existing Driver Parameter Value)	
LocalDriverLocation (Specifying Location to Search for Drivers)	
NoSoftwareFirstInstalls (Prohibiting Software First Installations)	
ReportLocation (Setting Up an Installation Report Title and Location)	
SilentInstallEnable (Enabling Unattended Installation)	
SilentRebootEnable (Enabling Silent Reboot)	
InstallWithoutQFE (Enabling Installation if a QFE Check Fails)	
AutoPilot Configuration File	
Using the Windows Environment Variable (%ProgramFiles%)	
Configuration Identification [AUTOPILOT.ID]	
Software Configuration [AUTOPILOT.CONFIG]18	
Configuration Prompts/Vendor-Specific Questions [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION] 18	
QFE Checks [STORPORT.QFES] 18	
Setting Up FC Driver Parameters [STORPORT.PARAMS]	
Setting Up System Parameters [SYSTEM.PARAMS]	9
AutoPilot Installer Exit Codes19	0
AutoPilot Installer Installation Reports19	1
Command Script Example19	1

Appendix E. RoCE Switch Support	193
Overview	193
DCBX-Enabled Switch Connection PFC Mode	193
Switch Configuration for PFC Priority 5	193
Host—Client Configuration	194
DCBX-Disabled Switch Connection (Generic Pause Mode)	194
Examples for Cisco Switch	194
Verifying Switch Configuration in OneCommand Manager	197

List of Figures

Figure 2-1	AutoPilot Installer Warning (Software-First Installation)	24
Figure 3-1	Partial View of Windows Device Manager	63
Figure 3-2	NIC Advanced Properties in Windows Server 2008	64
Figure 3-3	NIC Statistics Properties in Windows Server 2008	65
Figure 3-4	Device Manager for Windows Server 2012	78
Figure 3-5	Emulex NIC Driver Properties Page	79
Figure 3-6	Emulex NIC Advanced Properties Page	80
Figure 3-7	Emulex NIC Statistics Properties page	
Figure 3-8	Advanced Property Configuration - RoCE-Enabled	90
Figure 3-9	Get-NetAdapterRDMA - RoCE-Enabled	90
Figure 3-10	Get-NetOffloadGlobal - RoCE-Enabled	91
Figure 3-11	Active Network Connections and Listeners	91
Figure 3-12	SMB Share - Two RDMA Connections Per	
	RDMA-Enabled Network Interface	
Figure 3-13	Get-NetAdapterStatistics	
Figure 3-14	Two SMB Direct Connections Per Interface	93
Figure 3-15	Multichannel Constraint	94
Figure 3-16	Resource Counts on a 1-Port 10Gb or 40Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter	95
Figure 3-17	Resource Counts on a 2-Port 10Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter	
Figure 3-18	Resource Counts on a 4-Port 10Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter	95
Figure 3-19	The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Disabled	101
Figure 3-20	The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Enabled and	
	NParEP Disabled	103
Figure 3-21	The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Enabled and	465
	NParEP Enabled	
Figure A-1	Event Properties	
Figure A-2	iSCSI Error	165

List of Tables

Table 3-1	Storport Miniport Driver Parameters
Table 3-2	Recommended Settings for I/O Coalescing42
Table 3-3	Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2
Table 3-4	NIC Driver Options 47 NIC Driver Properties Statistics 65
Table 3-4	SMB Direct Active Connections (Client Mode) Per Port for
	OCe14000-Series Adapters
Table 3-6	PCI Function Representation for a Two-Port Adapter
Table 3-7	PCI Function Representation for a Four-Port Adapter
Table 3-8	PCI Function Representation for a 2-Port 16-Function Adapter— NParEP Enabled
Table 3-9	PCI Function Representation for a 4-Port 16 Function Adapter— NParEP Enabled
Table 3-10	Windows Server Performance Tuning Situations
Table 3-11	Statistics and Fine Tuning
Table 3-12	iSCSI Driver Options
Table 3-13	im_policy Settings
Table 3-14	LDTO and ETO Information on the Windows Server
Table 4-1	General Troubleshooting
Table 4-2	Cisco Nexus Switch Situations
Table 4-3	Troubleshooting the NIC Drivers
Table 4-4	Troubleshooting TCP Offload Failures 144
Table 4-5	Cisco Nexus Switch Situations for iSCSI 145
Table 4-6	Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver
Table A-1	Severe Errors
Table A-2	Malfunction Errors 152
Table A-3	Command Errors
Table A-4	Event Indications
Table A-5	ELS/FCP Command Error Status Codes 155
Table A-6	CT Command Response Codes 155
Table A-7	FC-CT Reject Reason Codes 156
Table A-8	ELS Command Codes 156
Table A-9	SCSI Status Codes 156
Table A-10	Local Reject Status Codes 157
Table A-11	SRB Status Codes
Table A-12	RoCE Event Log Entries
Table A-13	NIC Event Log Entries

Table A-14	iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows Server 2008	165
Table A-15	iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and	
	Windows Server 2012 R2	168
Table B-1	Data String Parameters for Option 43	178
Table C-1	Negotiated Speed Specification per Adapter Port Connection	180
Table D-1	Unattended Installation Error Codes	190

1. Introduction

Driver Information

This product supports the Emulex[®] OneConnect[™] family of universal converged network adapters (UCNAs) and the Emulex LightPulse[®] family of host bus adapters (HBAs) and converged fabric adapters (CFAs).

The Windows drivers support the following protocols:

- Fibre Channel (FC)
- FC over Ethernet (FCoE)
- Ethernet (NIC), which includes the TCP Offload Engine (TOE)
- Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI)
- RDMA over Converged Internet (RoCE) for the OCe14000-series adapters

Note: TOE is not supported on OCe14000-series and LPe16202 adapters.

This document explains how to install the Windows drivers on your system and configure the drivers' capabilities based on the supported networking protocols:

- FC and FCoE
 - Configuring the FC/FCoE driver parameters
 - Improving server performance with FC/FCoE drivers
- Ethernet and TOE
 - Configuring NIC driver options
 - o SR-IOV
 - Configuring NVGRE
 - Configuring RoCE supporting SMB Direct
 - Configuring Multichannel
 - Configuring NIC partitioning (NPAR) for Dell only
 - o Tuning network driver performance
- iSCSI
 - Configuring iSCSI driver options
 - Creating non-bootable targets
 - Configuring Multipath I/O

A NIC teaming package driver and manager are also available as a separate download. The user manual, *OneCommand NIC Teaming and VLAN Manager User Manual*, is available for download as well. See the Emulex website for more information.

Compatibility

For a list of adapters that are compatible with this driver, see the driver's Downloads page on the Emulex website. For compatible firmware versions, see the Downloads page for the specific adapter.

Operating System Requirements

One of the following operating systems must be installed on an x64 server:

- Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2: x64 versions, Enterprise and Server Core installation
 - **Note:** The Microsoft patch KB2846340 must be installed on your system in order for the NIC installation to be successful. If the patch is not installed on your system, the installation stops and asks you to install it. This patch from Microsoft's Knowledge Base (kb), is available for Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2008 SP2 on the Microsoft website.
- Windows 7 Ultimate, Enterprise, or Professional edition (x64 only; supported on only OneConnect OCe11100-series Universal Converged Network Adapters (UCNAs))
- Windows 8 and Window 8.1 x64 base version, Pro and Enterprise (x64 only; supported on only OCe11100-series UCNAs)

Notes:

- Windows 7 x64, Windows 8 x64, and Windows 8.1 x64 drivers are Emulex-signed. You must accept the Emulex certificate to install these kits. Support is provided by Emulex, but not by Microsoft.
- Check the Emulex website for required updates to the Windows operating system or the Emulex drivers.

Abbreviations

ACC	accept
ACK	acknowledgement
ADISC	discover address
AL_PA	arbitrated loop physical address
API	application programming interface
ARI	Alternative Routing-ID Interpretation
ARM	Advanced RISC Machine
ASC	additional sense code
ASCQ	additional sense code qualifier
BIOS	basic input-output system
CFA	converged fabric adapter
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
CLI	command line interface
CNT	count
CPU	central processing unit

CRC	cyclic redundancy check
СТ	command transport
CTCP	compound TCP
DAS	direct-attached storage
DCB	Data Center Bridging
DCBx	Data Center Bridging Exchange Protocol
DPC	deferred procedure call
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DID	destination ID
DIMM	dual in-line memory module
DISC	discover
DISC CNT	discovery node count
DMA	direct memory access
DNS	domain name server
DSM	device specific module
ELS	extended link service
ETO	extended time out
ETS	enhanced transmission selection
FAN	file area network
FC	Fibre Channel
FC-AL	Fibre Channel arbitrated loop
FCoE	Fibre Channel over Ethernet
FCP	Fibre Channel Protocol
FDISC	Discover F_Port Service Params
FDMI	Fabric-Device Management Interface
FLOGI	fabric login
FW	firmware
Gen 2 or Gen2	Generation 2 PCIe
GET_FT	get port identifiers
GSI	General Service Interface
GUI	graphical user interface
HBA	host bus adapter
hex	hexadecimal
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IEEE	Institution of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IET	iSCSI Enterprise Target
Int	interrupts

I/O	Input/Output
IOCTL	Input/Output control
iocb	input/output control block
IOMMU	· ·
IP	input/output memory management unit
	internet protocol
IPL	initial program load
IP NAT	IP network address translation
IPSec	IP Security protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
iSCSI	internet Small Computer System Interface
iSNS	internet Storage Name Server
IQN	iSCSI Qualified Name
KB	kilobyte or Knowledge Base
LACP	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
LAN	local area network
LBFO	load balancing and failover
LDTO	link down time out
LOGO	N_Port Logout
LRO	large receive offload
LSO	large send offload
LS_RJT	link service reject
LUN	logical unit number
MAC	media access control
MMC	Microsoft Management Console
MPIO	multipath input/output
MSI	message signaled interrupt
MSS	maximum segment size
MTU	maximum transmission unit
N/A	not applicable
NAS	network-attached storage
NAT	network address translation
NDIS	Network Driver Interface Specification
NIC	network interface card (or controller)
NPar	NIC partition
NPIV	N Port ID virtualization
NTFS	New Technology File System
. -	

NUMA	non-uniform memory access
NVGRE	network virtualization generic routing encapsulation
OCCFG	OneConnect config
OS	operating system
PCI	peripheral controller interface
PCIe	peripheral controller interface express
PDISC	discover N_Port service parameter
PE	pre-installation environment
PF	PCI function
PFC	process flow control
PHY	physical layer
PLOGI	Port login
POST	power-on self-test
PRLI	process login
PRLO	process logout
PT-PT	point to point fabric topology
PXE	Pre-boot Execution Environment
QFE	Quick Fix Engineering
QoS	quality of service
QP	queue pairs
RAID	redundant array of independent disks
RCMD	Remote Command Service
RDMA	remote direct memory access
Recv	received
RNIC	RDMA network interface
RoCE	RDMA over converged Ethernet
ROM	read-only memory
RPI	remote port indicator
RSC	receive segment coalescing
RSCN	Register State Change Notify
RSS	receive side scaling
Rx	receive
SACK	selective acknowledgement
SAN	storage area network
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SFP	small form factor pluggable
SLI	service level interface

SMB	server message block
SRB	SCSI Request Block
SR-IOV	Single Root I/O Virtualization
SSH	Secure Shell network protocol
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol
TCP PSH	TCP "push" flag
TMF	task management function
ТМО	timed out
TOE	TCP Offload Engine
TSO	TCP segmentation offload
Tx	transmit
UCNA	Universal Converged Network Adapter
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UE	unrecoverable error
UI	user interface
UEFI BIOS	Unified Extensible Firmware Interface BIOS
ULP	Upper Layer Protocol
UMC	Universal Multichannel
UNC	universal naming convention
VF	virtual function
VLAN	virtual local area network
VLANID	virtual local area network id
VM	virtual machine
VMQ	virtual machine queue
VPN	virtual private network
vPort	virtual port
WAIK	Windows Automated Installation Kit
WMI	Window Management Instrumentation
WWN	world wide name
WWNN	world wide node name
WWPN	world wide port name
XRI	exchange resource indicator

2. Installation

Driver Installation Options

There are two ways that you can install the Windows drivers:

- OneInstall Installer contains all the Emulex Windows drivers (Emulex Storport Miniport and NDIS Miniport drivers) and the OneCommand Manager application in a single download package.
- Driver kits and AutoPilot Installer provide installation options ranging from simple installations with a few mouse clicks to unattended installations that use predefined script files and text-only installations.

Notes:

- If you are installing the NIC driver kit as an update to the Windows Server 2012 driver, some parameter defaults are different from the inbox driver. Emulex recommends that, after you install the Emulex out-of-box driver, you select "reset to default" on the Advanced tab of Device Manager property page. This returns all adapter and driver settings to the default values listed in this manual.
- Low performance can result when the Emulex NIC driver is installed on a system meeting the following conditions before installing Microsoft KB2846837:
 - A Windows 8, Windows 8.1, or Windows Server 2012 computer with multi-core processors is in use.
 - Three or more Ethernet ports are installed on the computer.
 - Receive Side Scaling (RSS) is enabled and sets the RSS profile to use the "Closest" parameter for the Ethernet adapters.

If these conditions exist, install KB2846837 before installing the Emulex NIC driver.

OneInstall Installer

Note: The OneInstall Installer does not allow you to perform pre-installation tasks, unattended installations, or text-only installations. For these tasks, use the driver kits.

The OneInstall package is a self-extracting executable file that installs the following software on your system:

- All compatible protocol drivers:
 - o FC
 - o FCoE
 - o iSCSI
 - o NIC
 - NIC+RoCE

- ElxPlus driver (supports the OneCommand Manager application, persistent binding, and LUN mapping and masking)
- OneCommand Manager application for Emulex adapters
 - **Note:** The Enterprise kit for the OneCommand Manager application does not operate locally on Windows Server Core. You must install the OneCommand Manager Core Kit (command-line interface only) to the Windows Server Core.

Loading the OneInstall Package

To install the drivers using the OneInstall package:

- 1. Download the OneInstall package from the Emulex website.
- 2. Navigate to the OneInstall package in Windows Explorer.
- 3. Double-click the OneInstall package. The Welcome screen appears.
- 4. Click Next. The Installation options screen appears.
- 5. Select the drivers and application that you want to install and click Next.

A progress screen appears while the OneInstall installer loads the selected drivers and applications. When the drivers and application software are loaded, an Installation completed screen appears.

6. Click Finish.

Driver Kit Installer

Each driver kit contains and loads all the Windows drivers for a specific protocol, and includes ElxPlus.

- FC driver package (elxdrvr-fc-<version>.exe)
- FCoE driver package (elxdrvr-fcoe-<version>.exe)
- iSCSI driver package (elxdrvr-iscsi-<version>.exe)
- NIC+RoCE driver package (elxdrvr-nic-<version>.exe)

Note: Updating the NIC protocol driver may temporarily disrupt operation of any NIC teams configured on the system.

Loading the Driver Kit

The driver kit copies the selected Emulex drivers and applications onto your computer.

Note: This procedure does not install drivers, and no driver changes are made until you run the AutoPilot Installer.

To load the driver kit:

- 1. Download the driver kit from the Emulex website to your system.
- 2. Double-click to run the driver kit. The Emulex Kit Welcome page opens.
- 3. Click **Next**. The Installation Options page opens.
- 4. Select one or both of the following options:

- Perform Installation of Software copies the driver kit for your operating system to your computer.
- Unpack All Drivers extracts all drivers to the current user's documents folder. Select this option to perform boot from SAN installations.

The Operation in progress page shows the kit file loading progress. When the kit files are loaded, the Installation completed page opens.

5. If you wish to continue with the installation, ensure that Start AutoPilot Installer is checked. Click **Next**.

AutoPilot Installer

AutoPilot Installer runs after the driver kit is loaded and the OneCommand Manager application is installed. AutoPilot Installer can install drivers:

- Immediately after the driver kit has been loaded
- At a later time using an interactive installation
- Through an unattended installation

AutoPilot Installer provides:

- Command line functionality Initiates an installation from a command prompt or script. Configuration settings can be specified in the command line.
- Compatibility verification Verifies that the driver to be installed is compatible with the operating system and platform.
- Driver installation and update Installs and updates drivers.
- Multiple adapter installation capability Installs drivers on multiple adapters, alleviating the need to manually install the same driver on all adapters in the system.
- Driver diagnostics Determines whether the driver is operating properly.
- Silent installation mode Suppresses all screen output (necessary for unattended installation).
- **Note:** AutoPilot Installer does not allow you to install the driver if the minimum Windows service pack or Microsoft Storport driver update is not installed.

You can install a driver by any of the following methods:

Note: These methods are not mutually exclusive.

- Hardware-first installation At least one Emulex adapter must be installed before you can install the Emulex drivers and utilities.
- **Software-first installation** You can install drivers and utilities using AutoPilot Installer prior to the installation of any adapters. You do not need to specify the adapter models to be installed later. The appropriate drivers and utilities automatically load when you install the adapters.
- **Utility-only installation** If the drivers in the driver kit share the same version with those already installed on the system, you can reinstall or update the previously installed utility without reinstalling the drivers.

- **Text-only installation** Text-based installation mode is used automatically when AutoPilot Installer is run on a Server Core system.
- Network installation You can place the driver kit installers on a shared network drive and install them across your LAN. Network-based installation is often used in conjunction with unattended installation and scripting. This allows you to configure and install the same driver version on all the hosts in a SAN.
- Unattended installation You can run the driver kit and AutoPilot Installer with no user interaction from a command line or script. Unattended installation works for both hardware-first and software-first installations and all driver kits. An unattended installation operates in silent mode (also referred to as quiet mode) and creates an extensive report file with installation status.
- **Note:** Complete driver and utilities documentation may be downloaded from the Emulex website (www.emulex.com). Click **Downloads** at the top of the web page and navigate by clicking the appropriate links.

Starting Installers from a Command Prompt or Script

When a driver kit or AutoPilot Installer is run from a command prompt or command script (batch file), the Windows command processor does not wait for the installer to run to completion. As a result, you cannot check the exit code of the installer before the next command is executed. Emulex recommends that for command line invocation, always use the "start" command with the "/wait" option. This causes the command processor to wait for the installer to finish before it continues.

For more information on command line installation and configuration parameters, see appendix D., "AutoPilot Installer Command Line and Configuration File Parameters," on page 181.

Running a Software Installation Interactively

There are two options when performing an installation interactively. These options assume you have already downloaded the driver kit from the Emulex website.

- Option 1 allows you to automatically run the AutoPilot Installer, which completes the driver kit loading and AutoPilot installation with a few mouse clicks.
- Option 2 allows you to run the AutoPilot Installer separately. This option is recommended when:
 - Changing installation settings for a limited number of systems.
 - Familiarizing yourself with AutoPilot Installer configuration options.

Option 1: Automatically Run the AutoPilot Installer

Use this option unless you have specific configuration needs.

- 1. Double-click the driver kit or run it from a command line. See appendix D., "AutoPilot Installer Command Line and Configuration File Parameters," on page 181 for information on the command line options. The command line parameter APargs allows you to specify arguments that are automatically passed to the AutoPilot Installer command. A Welcome page is displayed with driver kit version information and Emulex contact information.
- 2. Click Next to proceed to the Installation Options page.

For each installation option, the default installation location for that option is displayed. Browse to a different location, if desired.

3. Click **Install** to continue the installation.

The Progress dialog box is displayed. After all tasks are completed, the Finish dialog box is displayed. The Start AutoPilot Installer box is automatically selected.

- 4. Click **Finish**. AutoPilot Installer runs automatically and completes one of the following installations:
 - Hardware-First Installation or Driver and Utility Update (page 23).
 - Software-First Installation (page 24).

Option 2: Run the AutoPilot Installer Separately

To access these options, run AutoPilot Installer after the driver kit loading has been completed. This allows you to change the configuration options supplied to the AutoPilot Installer (see below).

- 1. Perform steps 1 through 3 for "Option 1: Automatically Run the AutoPilot Installer".
- 2. Clear the **Run AutoPilot Installer** check box on the Finish dialog box.
- 3. Click **Finish**. The driver kit installer exits.

After the driver kit loading is complete, change the configuration in one of two ways:

- Change the configuration file. See "Software Configuration Parameters" on page 183 for details.
- Supply parameters on the command line. See appendix D., "AutoPilot Installer Command Line and Configuration File Parameters," on page 181 for details.

Once you have finished this step, you can run AutoPilot Installer at a later time, using either of the following methods:

- **Note:** If you are supplying options using the command line, you must run AutoPilot Installer from the command line.
 - Select Programs>Emulex>AutoPilot Installer in the Start menu.
 - Run AutoPilot Installer from the command line. Type

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\<driver type>\APInstall.exe

Note: The location of APInstaller.exe may differ on your system, depending on your system's Program Files location. You may also specify a different location when you install the driver package.

Hardware-First Installation or Driver Update

The driver kit must be downloaded from the Emulex website and loaded.

Notes:

- Updating the NIC protocol driver may temporarily disrupt operation of any NIC teams configured on the system.
- To update the Emulex protocol drivers, begin the procedure at step 2.

To perform a hardware-first installation:

- 1. Install a new Emulex adapter and power-on the system. If the Windows Found New Hardware wizard is displayed, click **Cancel** to exit. AutoPilot Installer performs this function.
 - **Note:** If there are multiple adapters in the system, the Windows Found New Hardware wizard appears multiple times. Click **Cancel** to exit the wizard each time it appears.
- 2. Run AutoPilot Installer using one of the two options listed in "Running a Software Installation Interactively" on page 21.
- 3. When the AutoPilot Installer Welcome page appears, select an adapter in the list and click **Next**. The installation continues.

Consider the following:

- If you are updating the driver, the existing port settings are used, unless otherwise specified in the AutoPilot configuration file. These settings are pre-selected but can be changed. Set or change settings, then click **Next**.
- If you are initially installing a vendor-specific version of the Emulex driver installation program, a Driver Configuration page may be displayed. This page includes one or more windows with questions that you must answer before continuing the installation process. In this case, answer each question and click **Next** on each window to continue.
- 4. Click **Next**. The installation is completed automatically. A dialog box is displayed if Windows requires a reboot. Once the installation is successful, the Finish dialog box appears.
- 5. View or print a report, if desired.
 - View Installation Report The installation report is a text file with current Emulex adapter inventory, configuration information, and task results.
 - Print Installation Report The Windows print dialog box is displayed to select options for printing the installation report.
- 6. Click **Finish** to exit AutoPilot Installer. If the system must be rebooted, you are prompted to do so as indicated in step 4; you must reboot before using the drivers or utilities.

Software-First Installation

The driver kit must be downloaded from the Emulex website and loaded. Either the full or core driver package may be installed; only one can be installed on a system.

To perform a software-first installation:

1. Run AutoPilot Installer using one of the two options listed in "Running a Software Installation Interactively" on page 21. The warning in Figure 2-1 appears:

AutoPilot Installer Warning		
1	AutoPilot Installer cannot find any Emulex adapters in this system. AutoPilot Installer can perform a driver pre-installation, allowing you to install your adapters later. Click OK to pre-install drivers, or click Cancel to stop the installation.	

Figure 2-1 AutoPilot Installer Warning (Software-First Installation)

- 2. Click OK. A Welcome page appears.
- 3. Click **Next**. The installation automatically progresses. Once the installation is completed successfully, the Finish dialog box appears.
- 4. View or print a report, if desired.
 - View Installation Report The installation report is a text file with current Emulex adapter inventory, configuration information, and task results.
 - Print Installation Report The Windows print dialog box is displayed to select options for printing the installation report.
- 5. Click **Finish** to exit the AutoPilot Installer.

Text-Only Driver Installation

Text-based installation mode is used automatically when the driver kit installer runs on a server with the Server Core installation option of Windows Server. During text-based installations, AutoPilot Installer uses a command prompt window. The driver kit installer notifies you when the driver is installed and also gives you a chance to stop the installation.

Whether AutoPilot installer is launched from the command line or run as a program, Windows always starts AutoPilot Installer as a separate stand-alone task. This means that AutoPilot Installer has its own command prompt window and cannot access others.

Unattended Driver Installation

An unattended driver installation, sometimes referred to as a quiet or silent installation, requires no user input. This is useful for performing an installation remotely from a command script, or when you want to make sure a custom configuration is not changed by a user during installation.

When in unattended installation mode, AutoPilot Installer does the following:

- Reads the configuration file
- Reads any options that may be specified on the command line, overriding the configuration file settings as appropriate
- Opens the installation report file
- Validates the operating system
- Discovers adapters and records the adapter inventory in the report file
- Verifies mandatory configuration file parameters
- Searches for drivers to install based on the LocalDriverLocation setting in the configuration file
- Verifies, if appropriate, that the selected driver is either a different type than the currently installed driver or a more recent version of the currently installed driver
- Copies the driver parameters from the configuration file into the registry for the driver's co-installer (FC and FCoE drivers only)
- Installs or updates the driver
- Rediscovers adapters and records the updated adapter inventory in the report file
- Records the final results and closes the report file

There are two ways to perform an unattended installation:

- Install the driver silently.
- Run the driver kit installer separately.

Option 1: Install the Driver Silently

Run the driver kit from a command prompt or script. Specify the "/q" (quiet) command line option. For example:

```
elxdrv-fc-fcoe<version>.exe /q
```

Note: The name of the driver kit depends on the current version identifier. For other command line options, see "AutoPilot Installer Command Line and Configuration File Parameters" on page 181.

Option 2: Run the Driver Kit Installer Separately

- 1. Follow steps 1–3 for "Running a Software Installation Interactively" on page 21.
- 2. Clear the Run AutoPilot Installer check box on the Finish dialog box.
- 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - Run the AutoPilot Installer from a command prompt or script with the silent option:

```
APInstall.exe /silent
```

• Edit the AutoPilot Installer configuration file before running AutoPilot Installer. The configuration file is typically located in:

```
C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\<driver type>\APInstall.cfg
```

Uncomment the line that sets "SilentInstallEnable" to "True". There are other settings in the same section of the configuration file related to unattended installations that you may also want to edit. See "Software Configuration Parameters" on page 183 for more information. After editing the file, you can run the AutoPilot Installer from the Start menu, a command prompt, or a script.

Installation Failure

If the installation fails, the Diagnostics window displays that the adapter failed.

If the adapter fails:

- 1. Select the adapter to view the reason for the failure. The reason and suggested corrective action are displayed.
- 2. Perform the suggested corrective action and run AutoPilot Installer again.
 - **Note:** You can run AutoPilot Installer again from the Start menu (**Programs>Emulex>AutoPilot Installer**) or you can run APInstall.exe from a command prompt.

Manually Installing or Updating the Emulex Protocol Drivers

You can install or update the Emulex protocol drivers and utilities manually without using AutoPilot Installer.

The Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) driver supports the OneCommand Manager application, persistent binding, and LUN mapping and masking.

Note: The ElxPlus driver must be installed before you install the Emulex protocol drivers.

Installing the Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) Driver for the First Time

Note: Only one instance of the ElxPlus driver should be installed, even if you have multiple adapter ports installed in your system.

To install the ElxPlus driver from the desktop:

- 1. Run the driver kit installer, but do not run AutoPilot Installer. See "Running a Software Installation Interactively" on page 21 for instructions.
- 2. Select **Start>Settings>Control Panel>Add Hardware**. The Add Hardware Wizard window appears. Click **Next**.
- 3. Select Yes, I have already connected the hardware and click Next.
- 4. Select Add a new hardware device and click Next.
- 5. Select **Install the hardware that I manually select from a list (Advanced)** and click **Next.**

- 6. Select Show All Devices and click Next.
- 7. Click **Have Disk...** and direct the Device Wizard to the location of elxplus.inf. If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder and C:\ is your Windows system drive, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\Drivers\Storport\x64\HBA

- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Select **Emulex PLUS.** Click **Next** and click **Next** again to install the driver.
- 10. Click **Finish.** The initial ElxPlus driver installation has completed. Continue with manual installation of the Storport Miniport Driver. See "Installing or Updating the FC/FCoE Storport Miniport Driver" on page 27 for this procedure.

Updating the Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) Driver

Note: Only one instance of the ElxPlus driver should be installed, even if you have multiple adapter ports installed in your system.

To update an existing ElxPlus driver from the desktop:

- 1. Run the driver kit installer, but do not run AutoPilot Installer. See "Running a Software Installation Interactively" on page 21 for instructions on how to do this.
- 2. Select Start>Settings>Control Panel>Administrative Tools>Computer Management.
- 3. Click **Device Manager** (left pane).
- 4. Click the plus sign (+) next to the Emulex PLUS class (right pane) to show the ElxPlus driver entry.
- 5. Right-click the ElxPlus driver entry and select **Update Driver...** from the menu.
- 6. Select **No, not this time.** Click **Next** on the Welcome to the Hardware Update Wizard window. Click **Next**.
- 7. Select Install from a list or specific location (Advanced) and click Next.
- 8. Select Don't Search. I will choose the driver to install.
- 9. Click **Have Disk...** and direct the Device Wizard to the location of the driver's distribution kit. If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\Drivers\Storport\x64

- 10. Click OK. Select Emulex PLUS.
- 11. Click Next to install the driver.
- 12. Click **Finish.** The ElxPlus driver update is finished. Continue with manual installation of the Storport Miniport Driver.

Installing or Updating the FC/FCoE Storport Miniport Driver

To update or install the FC/FCoE Storport Miniport driver from the desktop:

- 1. Select Start>Settings>Control Panel>System.
- 2. Select the **Hardware** tab.
- 3. Click Device Manager.

- 4. Open the SCSI and RAID Controllers item.
- 5. Double-click the desired Emulex adapter.
 - **Note:** The driver affects only the selected adapter. If there are other adapters in the system, you must repeat this process for each adapter. All dual-channel adapter models are displayed in Device Manager as two adapters, and each adapter must be updated.
- 6. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 7. Click **Update Driver.** The Update Driver wizard starts.
- 8. Select **No, not this time**. Click **Next** on the Welcome to the Hardware Update Wizard window.
- 9. Select Install from a list or specific location (Advanced) and click Next.
- 10. Select Don't search. I will choose the driver to install and click Next.
 - **Note:** Using the OEMSETUP.INF file to update Emulex's FC/FCoE Storport Miniport driver overwrites customized driver settings. If you are updating from a previous installation, write down the settings. Following installation, use the OneCommand Manager application to restore the previous settings.
- 11. Click **Have Disk...** and direct the Device Wizard to the location of oemsetup.inf. If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\FC(or FCoE)\Drivers\Storport\x64\HBA

- 12. Click **OK**. Select **Emulex LightPulse LPX000**, **PCI Slot X**, **Storport Miniport Driver** (your adapter model is displayed here).
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. Click Finish.

The driver installation has completed. The driver should start automatically. If the adapter is connected to a SAN or data storage device, a blinking yellow light on the back of the adapter indicates a link up condition.

Installing or Updating the iSCSI Driver

To update or install the iSCSI driver from the desktop:

- 1. Select Start>Settings>Control Panel>System.
- 2. Select the **Hardware** tab.
- 3. Click Device Manager.
- 4. Open the "SCSI and RAID Controllers" item.
- 5. Double-click the desired Emulex adapter.
- 6. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 7. Click Update Driver. The Update Driver wizard starts.
- 8. Select **No, not this time**. Click **Next** on the Welcome to the Hardware Update Wizard window

- **Note:** The driver affects only the selected adapter. If there are other adapters in the system, you must repeat this process for each adapter. All dual-channel adapter models are displayed in Device Manager as two adapters; therefore, you must update each adapter.
- 9. Select Install from a list or specific location (Advanced) and click Next.
- 10. Select **Don't search. I will choose the driver to install** and click **Next**.
- 11. Click **Have Disk...** and direct the Device Wizard to the location of be2iscsi.inf. If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder, the path is:

 $\label{eq:c:Program Files} \end{tabular} C:\Program Files\\Emulex\\AutoPilot Installer\\iSCSI\\Drivers\\Storport\\x64\\[Windows Version]$

- 12. Click OK. Select Emulex OneConnect OCm<your adapter model>, iSCSI Initiator.
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. Click Finish.

The driver installation has completed. The driver should start automatically.

Installing or Updating the NIC Driver

Note: The Microsoft patch KB2846340 must be installed on your system. This patch, from Microsoft's Knowledge Base (kb), is available for Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2008 SP2 on the Microsoft website.

Windows Server 2008

- 1. Select Start>Settings>Control Panel>Device Manager.
- 2. Open the Network Adapters item.
- 3. Double-click the desired Emulex adapter.
- 4. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 5. Click **Update Driver.** The Update Driver wizard starts.
- 6. Click Browse my computer for driver software.

Note: The driver affects only the selected adapter. If there are other adapters in the system, you must repeat this process for each adapter. All dual-channel adapter models are displayed in the Device Manager as two adapters, therefore, you must update each adapter.

- 7. Click Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer and click Next.
- 8. Select the network adapter that matches your hardware and click Have Disk....
- 9. Direct the Device Wizard to the location of be2nd6x.inf. If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\NIC\Drivers\NDIS\x64\Win2008

- 10. Click OK. The Windows Security dialog box opens.
- 11. Click Install.

12. When the device driver finishes installing, click Close.

The driver installation is completed. The driver should start automatically.

Windows Server 2012

- 1. Select Server Manager>Dashboard>Tools>Computer Management>Device Manager.
 - **Note:** Server Manager is set to open by default when booting Windows Server 2012. If it does not open automatically, you can open it with the Server Manager icon at the bottom left of the screen.
- 2. Open the **Network Adapters** item.
- 3. Double-click the desired Emulex adapter.
- 4. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 5. Click **Update Driver.** The Update Driver wizard starts.
- 6. Click Browse my computer for driver software.
 - **Note:** The driver affects only the selected adapter. If there are other adapters in the system, you must repeat this process for each adapter. All dual-channel adapter models are displayed in the Device Manager as two adapters, therefore, you must update each adapter.
- 7. Click Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer.
- 8. Select the network adapter that matches your hardware and click Have Disk....
- 9. Direct the Device Wizard to the location of ocnd63.inf. Select the desired oemsetup.inf file and click **Open**.

If you have installed the driver installer kit in the default folder, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\Drivers\NDIS\x64\NIC\Win2012

- 10. Click Next.
- 11. When the device driver finishes installing, click Close.

The driver installation has completed. The driver should start automatically.

Removing Emulex Driver Kits and Drivers

Uninstalling Emulex Driver Kits

Note: When you uninstall the Emulex driver kit, AutoPilot Installer is automatically uninstalled.

Windows Server 2008

To uninstall a driver kit on a Windows Server 2008 system:

1. Open the **Programs and Features** control panel.

- 2. Select one of the following in the program list and click the **Uninstall** icon in the tool bar above the program list. If you have User Access Control enabled, click **Continue** when asked for permission.
 - Emulex FC kit-2.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/FCoE kit-2.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/NIC 4.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/iSCSI kit-4.xx.xxx
- 3. Click **Yes** when prompted to remove the kit. After the kit is removed from the system, click **OK**.

Server Core System

To uninstall a driver kit on a Server Core system:

- 1. From the system prompt, navigate to the **Program Files** folder.
- 2. Navigate to Emulex\AutoPilot Installer.
- 3. Run the following batch files:
 - Uninstall_fc_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_cna_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_nic_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_iscsi_kit.bat

The driver files are removed from the system.

On all platforms, the reports folder in the "Emulex\AutoPilot Installer" folder is not removed, so you can still view installation history and the drivers that have been installed on the system. You can delete the reports folder at any time.

Windows Server 2012

To uninstall a driver kit on a Windows Server 2012 system:

- 1. Select Start>Control Panel.
- 2. From the Control Panel, select **Programs>Uninstall a Program**.
- 3. Select one of the following in the program list and click the **Uninstall** icon in the tool bar above the program list. If you have User Access Control enabled, click **Continue** when asked for permission.
 - Emulex FC kit-2.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/FCoE kit-2.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/NIC 4.xx.xxx
 - Emulex/iSCSI kit-4.xx.xxx
- 4. Click **Yes** when prompted to remove the kit. When the kit is removed from the system, click **OK**.

Server Core System

To uninstall a driver kit on a Server Core system:

1. From the system prompt, navigate to the **Program Files** folder.

- 2. Navigate to Emulex\AutoPilot Installer.
- 3. Run the following batch files:
 - Uninstall_fc_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_cna_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_nic_kit.bat
 - Uninstall_iscsi_kit.bat

The driver files are removed from the system.

On all platforms, the reports folder in the "Emulex\AutoPilot Installer" folder is not removed, so you can still view installation history and the drivers that have been installed on the system. You can delete the reports folder at any time.

Uninstalling the Emulex Drivers

The Emulex Storport Miniport and Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) drivers are uninstalled using the Device Manager.

Windows Server 2008

Note: On Windows 2008, after the message "Warning – you are about to uninstall this device from your system" is displayed, you must select **Delete the software for this device** to uninstall the driver

Emulex Storport Miniport Driver

To uninstall the Emulex Storport Miniport driver:

- 1. Select Start>All Programs>Administrative Tools>Computer Management.
- 2. Click Device Manager.
- 3. Double-click the adapter from which you want to remove the Storport Miniport driver. A device-specific console window is displayed. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 4. Click **Uninstall** and click **OK** to uninstall.

ElxPlus Driver

Note: Uninstall the ElxPlus driver only if all adapters and installations of Emulex miniport drivers are uninstalled.

To uninstall the ElxPlus driver:

- 1. Run the Device Manager (steps 1 and 2 above).
- 2. Click the plus sign (+) next to the Emulex PLUS driver class.
- 3. Right-click the Emulex driver and click Uninstall.
- 4. Click OK in the Confirm Device Removal window.

Older Versions of the Emulex Storport Miniport Driver

To uninstall or update an earlier version of the Storport Miniport driver (prior to version 1.20), you must remove the registry settings for the adjunct driver prior to manually installing a new driver.

To remove the adjunct driver registry settings:

- 1. Browse to the Storport Miniport driver version 1.20 (or later) driver kit that you downloaded and extracted.
- 2. Double-click on the **deladjct.reg** file. A Registry Editor window appears to confirm that you want to execute deladjct.reg.
- 3. Click **Yes**. The elxadjct key is removed from the registry.

Windows Server 2012

The Emulex Storport Miniport and Emulex PLUS (ElxPlus) drivers are uninstalled using the device manager.

Note: On Windows 2012 and Windows 2012 R2, after the message "Warning – you are about to uninstall this device from your system" is displayed, you must select the checkbox **Delete the software for this device** to uninstall the driver.

Emulex Storport Miniport Driver

To uninstall the Emulex Storport Miniport driver in Windows Server 2012:

- 1. Select Server Manager>Dashboard>Tools>Computer Management>Device Manager.
- 2. Double-click the adapter from which you want to remove the Storport Miniport driver. A device-specific console window is displayed. Select the **Driver** tab.
- 3. Click **Uninstall** and click **OK** to uninstall.

ElxPlus Driver

Note: Uninstall the ElxPlus driver only if all adapters and installations of Emulex miniport drivers are uninstalled.

To uninstall the ElxPlus driver:

- 1. Run the Device Manager (step 1 above).
- 2. Click the plus sign (+) next to the Emulex PLUS driver class.
- 3. Right-click the Emulex driver and click Uninstall.
- 4. Click **OK** in the Confirm Device Removal window.

3. Configuration

Note: For information on configuring profile management, see the *OneCommand Manager Application User Manual* or the *OneCommand Manager Command Line Interface User Manual*.

FC/FCoE Driver Configuration

The Emulex Storport Miniport driver has many options that you can modify to provide different behavior. You can set Storport Miniport driver parameters using the OneCommand Manager application. Refer to the *OneCommand Manager Application User Manual* for information on using this utility to configure the driver.

Configuring FC Driver Parameters

Table 3-1, Storport Miniport Driver Parameters, provides information such as the allowable range of values and factory defaults. Parameters can be entered in decimal or hexadecimal format.

A parameter has one of the following activation requirements:

- Dynamic The change takes effect while the system is running.
- Reset An adapter reset from the utility is required before the change takes effect.
- Reboot A reboot of the entire machine is required before the change takes effect. In this case, you are prompted to perform a reboot when you exit the utility.

Notes:

- If you are creating custom unattended installation scripts, any driver parameter can be modified and included in the script.
- If the Adapter/Protocol column is blank, the parameter is supported on both LightPulse and OneConnect adapters. "LightPulse only" indicates that the parameters is supported only on LightPulse adapters. "FC only" indicates that the parameters is supported on LightPulse and non-LightPulse FC adapters.
- The Windows driver enumerates 1024 targets across all physical and virtual ports with 8G and 16G adapters. However, setting ConfigScale to 0 changes the support to 128 targets. See "ConfigScale" in Table 3-1, Storport Miniport Driver Parameters, on page 35.

Most parameters default to a setting that optimizes adapter performance.

 Table 3-1
 Storport Miniport Driver Parameters

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
AutoMap=n	AutoMap controls the way targets are assigned SCSI IDs. Discovered targets are assigned persistent SCSI IDs according to the selected binding method. Persistent bindings do not take effect with the driver in stand-alone mode. 0 = automap is disabled. The OneCommand Manager application persistently sets the SCSI address of a discovered FCP capable FC node (target). 1 = automap by WWNN. 2 = automap by WWNN. 3 = automap by DID Value: 0-3 Default = 2	Reboot	
Class=n	Class selects the class of service on FCP commands. If set to 2, class = 2. If set to 3, class = 3. Value: 2-3 Default = 3	Dynamic	FC Only
CoalesceMsCnt=n	CoalesceMsCn specifies wait time in milliseconds to generate an interrupt response if CoalesceRspCnt has not been satisfied. Zero specifies an immediate interrupt response notification. A non-zero value enables response coalescing at the specified interval in milliseconds. Value: 0-63 (decimal) or 0x0-0x3F (hex) Default = 0 (0x0)	Reset	LightPulse Only
CoalesceRspCnt=n	CoalesceRspCn specifies the number of response entries that trigger an Interrupt response. Value: 0-255 (decimal) or 0x1-0xFF (hex) Default = 8 (0x8)	Reset	LightPulse Only

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
		-	
ConfigScale	ConfigScale sets the memory footprint profile in accord with the anticipated use case on a per port basis. While the default value is 4, a value of 1 is considered to be the typical use case. The ConfigScale parameter supersedes the ExtTransferSize parameter for OneConnect adapters. For OneConnect adapters:	Reboot	OneConnect and Emulex 16-Gb adapters
	For all values except 0, up to 1024 targets can be discovered and mapped. When ConfigScale= 0, only 128 targets can be discovered and mapped. A value of 0 limits max XRIs to 512.		
	Note: Use ConfigScale = 0 to minimize the driver's per-port memory foot print.		
	When ConfigScale is set to:		
	• 0 - the max transfer size is limited to 500 KB		
	• 1 - the max transfer size is limited to 1012 KB.		
	 2 - the max transfer size is limited to 2036KB. O Use ConfigScale = 2 if connecting to tape devices. 		
	 3 - the max transfer size is limited to 2036KB, which is the best setting if you are running performance benchmarks in a non-production environment. 		
	• 4 - the max transfer size is limited to 512KB. Emulex 16 Gb/s adapters:		
	ConfigScale is always set at 4. The max transfer size is set according to the value of the 'ExtTransferSize' parameter.		
	Values: 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 Default = 4		
	Note: For Emulex 16Gb/s adapters only the value of 4 is valid.		
DiscoveryDelay=n	DiscoveryDelay controls whether the driver waits for 'n' seconds to start port discovery after link up.	Dynamic	
	If set to 0 = immediate discovery after link up.		
	If set to 1 or 2 = the number of seconds to wait after link-up before starting port discovery.		
	Value: 0-2 seconds (decimal)		
	Default = 0.		

Table 3-1	Storport Miniport Driver Parame	eters (Continued)
-----------	---------------------------------	-------------------

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
DriverTraceMask	 The DriverTraceMask parameter is only available on operating systems that support extended system event logging. If set to 0 = the parameter is disabled. If set to 1 = error events logging is enabled. If set to 4 = warning events logging is enabled. If set to 8 = informational events logging is enabled. The values can be masked to generate multi-levels of events logging. Values: 0, 1, 4, and 8. Default = 0. 	Dynamic	
EnableAck0=n	Set to 1 to force sequence rather than frame level acknowledgement for class 2 traffic over an exchange. This applies to FCP data exchanges on IREAD and IWRITE commands. Value: 0-1 (decimal) Default = 1	Reset	FC only
EnableAUTH	EnableAUTH enables fabric authentication. This parameter requires the authentication to be supported by the fabric. Authentication is enabled when this value is set to 1. Value: 0-1 Default = 0	Reboot	FC only (up to and including 8 Gb)
EnableFDMI=n	If set to 1, enables management server login on fabric discovery. This allows FDMI to operate on switches that have FDMI-capable firmware. If set to 2, FDMI operates and uses the host name feature of FDMI. Value: 0-2 (decimal) Default = 0	Reset	
EnableNPIV=n	 If set to 1, enables NPIV. Requires NPIV supported firmware for the adapter. Value: 0-1 Default = 0 (disabled) Notes: To run the driver using NPIV or SLI-3 optimization, the firmware must be version 2.72a0 or later. If an earlier version is used, the driver runs in SLI-2 mode and does not support NPIV. NPIV is not available on 1 Gb/s and 2 Gb/s adapters. 	Reboot	

Table 3-1	Storport Mini	port Driver	Parameters	(Continued)
	5101 por t mini	port Driver	i ui ui ii ci ci s	(continueu)

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
ExtTransferSize	ExtTransferSize is an initialization-time parameter that affects the maximum SGL that the driver can handle, which determines the maximum I/O size that a port will support.		LightPulse adapters only including LPe15000 and LPe16000 HBAs.
	If set to 0 = the maximum default transfer size is 512KB for all controller models.		
	If set to 1= the maximum transfer size is 1MB.		
	If set to 2 = the maximum transfer size is 2MB.		
	If set to 3 = the maximum transfer size is 4MB. Value: 0-3		
	Default = 0 (disabled)		
FrameSizeMSB=n	FrameSizeMSB controls the upper byte of receive FrameSize if issued in PLOGI. This allows the FrameSize to be constrained on 256-byte increments from 256 (1) to 2048 (8). Value: 0-8 Default = 0	Reset	
InitTimeout=n	Determines the number of time-out seconds during driver initialization for the link to come up. If the link fails to come up by InitTimeout, driver initialization exits but is still successful. If the link comes up before InitTimeout, the driver sets double the amount for discovery to complete. Value: 5-30 seconds or 0x5-0x1E (hex) Default = 15 seconds (0xF)	Reboot	
LimTransferSize	Limits maximum transfer size when non-zero to selectable values.	Reboot	
	Values: 0 = Port Default		
	1 = 64Kb		
	2 = 128 Kb		
	3 = 256Kb		

Table 3-1 Storport Miniport Driver Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
LinkSpeed=n	 LinkSpeed has significance only if the adapter supports speeds other than one Gb/s. Value: Auto-select, 1 Gb/s, 2 Gb/s, 4 Gb/s, 8 Gb/s Default = Auto-select Notes: Setting this option incorrectly can cause the adapter to fail to initialize. If you configure the link speed in a BIOS utility, the link speed may be overwritten by the Windows operating system according to its own configure the link speed in both the operating system driver and the Boot BIOS or UEFI driver. 	Reset	FC Only
LinkTimeOut=n	LinkTimeOut applies to a private loop only. A timer is started on all mapped targets using the link timeout value. If the timer expires before discovery is re-resolved, commands issued to timed out devices returns a SELECTIION_TIMEOUT. The Storport driver is notified of a bus change event which leads to the removal of all LUNs on the timed out devices. Value: 1-500 seconds or 0x0-0xFE (hex) Default = 30 (0x1E)	Dynamic	
LogErrors=n	 LogErrors determine the minimum severity level required to enable entry of a logged error into the system event log. Errors are classified as severe, malfunction or command level. A severe error requires user intervention to correct a firmware or adapter issue. An invalid link speed selection is an example of a severe error. A malfunction error indicates that the system has issues, but user intervention is not required. An invalid fabric command type is an example of a malfunction error. An object allocation failure is an example of a command error. If set to 0 = all errors are logged. If set to 2 = malfunction errors are logged. If set to 3 = severe errors are logged. Value: 0-3 Default = 3 	Dynamic	

Table 3-1	Storport Mini	port Driver Pa	arameters (Continued)

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
NodeTimeout=n	The node timer starts when a node (that is, a discovered target or adapter) becomes unavailable. If the node fails to become available before the NodeTimeout interval expires, the operating system is notified so that any associated devices (if the node is a target) can be removed. If the node becomes available before NodeTimeout expires the timer is canceled and no notification is made. Value: 1-255 seconds or 0x0-0xFF (hex) Default = 30 (0x1E)	Dynamic	
QueueDepth=n	QueueDepth requests per LUN/target (see QueueTarget parameter). If you expect the number of outstanding I/Os per device to exceed 32, then you must increase to a value greater than the number of expected I/Os per device (up to a value of 254). If the QueueDepth value is set too low, a performance degradation can occur due to driver throttling of its device queue. QueueDepth supports more than 1000 outstanding commands per port. Value: 1-254 or 0x1-0xFE (hex) Default = 32 (0x20)	Dynamic	
QueueTarget=n	QueueTarget controls I/O depth limiting on a per target or per LUN basis. If set to 0 = depth limitation is applied to individual LUNs. If set to 1 = depth limitation is applied across the entire target. Value: 0-1 or 0x0-0x1 (hex) Default = 0 (0x0)	Dynamic	
RmaDepth=n	RmaDepth sets the remote management buffer queue depth. The greater the depth, the more concurrent management controls can be handled by the local node. Value: 8-64, or 0x8-0x40 (hex) Default = 16 (0x10) Note: The RmaDepth driver parameter pertains to the functionality of the OneCommand Manager application.	Reboot	

Table 3-1	Storport	Miniport Drive	⁻ Parameters	(Continued)
-----------	----------	----------------	-------------------------	-------------

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
ScanDown=n	If set to 0 = lowest AL_PA = lowest physical disk (ascending AL_PA order). If set to 1 = highest AL_PA = lowest physical disk (ascending SEL_ID order). Value: 0-1 Default = 1 Note: This option applies to private loop only in DID mode.	Reboot	FC Only
SLIMode=n	If set to 0 = autoselect firmware, use the latest firmware installed. If set to 2 = implies running the adapter firmware in SLI-2 mode. If set to 3 = implies running the adapter firmware in SLI-3 mode. Value: 0, 2, and 3 Default = 0	Reboot	LightPulse Only
SrbTimeout	 SrbTimeout limits the SRB timeout value to 60 seconds when set to 1 or enabled. This is a non-displayed parameter where it has to be set manually into the registry. This option alters the I/O timeout behavior where an I/O will be returned in a max timeout of 60 seconds on some long I/O timeout. If set to 1 = enabled If set to 0 = disabled Values: 0, 1 Default = 0 		
Topology=n	Topology values can be 0 to 3. If set to 0 (0x0) = FC-AL. If set to 1 (0x1) = PT-PT fabric. If set to 2 (0x2) = *FC-AL first, then attempt PT-PT. If set to 3 (0x3) = *PT-PT fabric first, then attempt FC-AL. * Topology fail-over requires v3.20 firmware or higher. If firmware does not support topology fail-over, options 0,2 and 1,3 are analogous. Value: 0-3 Default = 2 (0x2)	Reset	FC Only

Table 3-1	Storport Miniport Driver Parameters	(Continued)
-----------	-------------------------------------	-------------

Parameter	Definitions	Activation Requirement	Adapter/Protocol
TraceBufSiz=n	TraceBufSiz sets the size in bytes for the internal driver trace buffer. The internal driver trace buffer acts as an internal log of the driver's activity. Value: 250,000-2,000,000 or 0x3D090-0x1E8480 (hex). Default = 250,000 (0x3D090)	Reboot	

Table 3-1	Storport	Miniport	Driver	Parameters	(Continued)
	5101 por t	minport	DIIVCI	i ui ui iici ci s	(continucu)

Server Performance with FC Drivers

I/O Coalescing

I/O Coalescing is enabled and controlled by two driver parameters: CoalesceMsCnt and CoalesceRspCnt. The effect of I/O Coalescing depends on the CPU resources available on the server. With I/O Coalescing turned on, interrupts are batched, reducing the number of interrupts and maximizing the number of commands processed with each interrupt. For heavily loaded systems, this provides better throughput.

With I/O Coalescing turned off (the default), each I/O processes immediately, one CPU interrupt per I/O. For systems not heavily loaded, the default provides better throughput. The following table shows recommendations based upon the number of I/Os per adapter.

I/Os per Second	Suggested CoalesceMsCnt	Suggested CoalesceRspCnt
I/Os < 10000	0	8
10000 < I/Os < 18000	1	8
18000 < I/Os < 26000	1	16
1/Os > 26000	1	24

Table 3-2 Recommended Settings for I/O Coalescing

CoalesceMsCnt

The CoalesceMsCnt parameter controls the maximum elapsed time in milliseconds that the adapter waits before it generates a CPU interrupt. The value range is 0-63 (decimal) or 0x0-0x3F (hex). The default is 0 and disables I/O Coalescing.

CoalesceRspCnt

The CoalesceRspCnt parameter controls the maximum number of responses to batch before an interrupt generates. If CoalesceRspCnt expires, an interrupt generates for all responses collected up to that point. With CoalesceRspCnt set to less than 2, response coalescing is disabled and an interrupt triggers for each response. The value range for CoalesceRspCnt is 1–255 (decimal) or 0x1–0xFF (hex). The default value is 8.

Note: A system restart is required to make changes to CoalesceMsCnt and CoalesceRspCnt.

Performance Testing

There are three driver parameters that need to be considered (and perhaps changed from the default) for better performance testing: QueueDepth, CoalesceMsCnt, and CoalesceRspCnt.

QueueDepth

If the number of outstanding I/Os per device is expected to exceed 32, increase this parameter to a value greater than the number of expected I/Os per device, up to a maximum of 254. The QueueDepth parameter defaults to 32. If 32 is set and not a high enough value, performance degradation may occur due to Storport throttling its device queue.

CoalesceMsCnt

CoalesceMsCnt defaults to zero. If you are using a performance evaluation tool such as IOMETER and if you expect the I/O activity to be greater than 8000 I/Os per second, set CoalesceMsCnt to 1 and reinitialized with an adapter reset or system reboot.

CoalesceRspCnt

CoalesceRspCnt defaults to 8. For all other values up to the maximum of 63, the adapter does not interrupt the host with a completion until either CoalesceMsCnt milliseconds has elapsed or CoalesceRspCnt responses are pending. The value of these two driver parameters reduces the number of interrupts per second which improves overall CPU utilization. However, there is a point where the number of I/Os per second is small relative to CoalesceMsCnt and this will slow down the completion process, causing performance degradation.

Examples

Test Scenario One:

- You execute IOMETER with an I/O depth of 1 I/O per device in a small-scale configuration (16 devices). In this case, the test does not exceed the adapter 's performance limits and the number of I/Os per second are in the low thousands.
- Recommendation: set CoalesceMsCnt to 0 (or leave the default value).

Test Scenario Two:

- You execute IOMETER with an I/O depth of 48 I/Os per device in a small-scale configuration (16 devices).
- Recommendation: set QueueDepth to be greater than 48 (for example, 64).

NIC Driver Configuration

Notes:

- TOE is supported and enabled by default.
- TOE is not supported on LPe16202 CFAs and OCe14000-series adapters.

Configuring NIC Driver Options

The Windows Server NIC driver supports configurable driver options through the Advanced Property page in Windows Device Manager. For information on how to configure the options through the Advanced Property page, see "Modifying Advanced Properties" on page 62.

For more information on NIC driver options, see "Network Driver Performance Tuning" on page 107.

You can also set configurable driver options using Microsoft PowerShell on Windows Server 2012. Refer to the documentation that accompanies the Windows Server 2012 operating system for more information on using PowerShell.

See Table 3-3 on page 47 for a list of NIC driver options.

Advisory: PowerShell Behavior

Issues with Capabilities Reported by Standard PowerShell Commands (Get-NetAdapter)

Driver parameter default registry values are initially populated from the driver installation INF file. Thereafter, the registry is written to only if the default settings are explicitly overridden. PowerShell uses these registry values to report capabilities with the result that the registry values may not always reflect what is supported in the current configuration.

The default settings can be modified through the Driver Properties page, standard PowerShell commands, and utilities like occfg (for more information on occfg, see "Using OCCFG for Windows NIC Driver Options" on page 68).

Standard PowerShell (Get-NetAdapter*) commands behave in the following manner:

- If the feature is currently enabled, the driver reports its current capabilities. PowerShell reports all of the feature capabilities based on what the driver indicates. These are guaranteed to be what the NIC supports in the current configuration.
- If the feature is not enabled, the driver does not report any current capabilities. At that point, PowerShell searches the registry for keys related to the feature and reports their values. These are either the default values (INF) or the last configured user values (if overwritten by the user). Default values are only intended as maximum upper bounds; they are not guaranteed resources supported in every configuration.

As a result, the driver can only report a feature's current capabilities (accurate for the present configuration), if the feature is currently enabled. However, standard PowerShell commands will report whatever is present in the registry, when the feature is not enabled. This can conflict with what the driver actually supports in the current configuration.

Determining What PowerShell Is Reporting (Registry/Driver-Reported Capabilities)

You can usually tell whether PowerShell is using capabilities reported by the driver or is picking up registry values.

• SRIOV

Check the output of Get-NetAdapterSRIOV.CurrentCapabilities for CurrentCapabilities.

If CurrentCapabilities is empty, the driver is not currently enabled for SR-IOV. Any reported fields in Get-NetAdapterSriov | fl * are based on registry values. If CurrentCapabilities is not null, the driver is enabled for SR-IOV. Get-NetAdapterSriov fields are based on what the driver reports.

NetAdapter*) commands behave in this manner.

• RDMA

Check the output of Get-NetAdapterRdma.RdmaAdapterInfo for RdmaAdapterInfo.

If RdmaAdapterInfo is empty, any reported fields in Get-NetAdapterRdma | fl * are based on registry values. If RdmaAdapterInfo is not null, the driver is reporting RDMA capabilities. Get-NetAdapterRdma fields are based on what the driver reports.

Considerations for Using UMC and NIC

Note: UMC is not supported on LPe16202 CFAs.

- 64 VLAN IDs can be used with each UMC virtual channel.
- SR-IOV must be disabled when using UMC because it is not supported.

For additional information on UMC, refer to the *Emulex Universal Multichannel Reference Guide*, which is available for download from the Emulex website.

ARI Considerations

Note: RoCE is not supported with ARI.

The PCIe standard limits an adapter to a maximum of 8 physical functions. This means that a 2-port adapter can only have 4 functions per port and a 4 port adapter can only have 2 functions per port. The following requirements must be met to fully support ARI and expose more than 8 functions on an adapter:

- ARI must be available on the system to support up to sixteen functions on an adapter. If these conditions are not met, although you may configure all sixteen functions, only eight functions will be present and discovered by the OneCommand Manager application after a reboot.
- Only OCe14000-series adapters support ARI.
- The system hardware, such as the motherboard and BIOS, must support ARI.
 - ARI must be enabled in the system BIOS.
 - The operating system must support ARI, such as the Windows Server 2012 and later.
- Any management tools that you use must support ARI, such as OneCommand Manager 10.2 and later.

For Dell multichannel support, see "NPar Configuration (Dell Only)" on page 99.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Class of Service (802.1p)	Automatic Priority (default) Filtered Priority User Priority Disable Priority	Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 The following modes are supported for selecting 802.1p priority tags: Automatic Priority - The DCBX standard allows the network adapter to negotiate priority class usage with DCBX aware endpoints such as switches or network cards. If the peer indicates that priority pause is supported for a non-zero priority, the NIC automatically inserts the default priority in all transmitted packets. This is the default mode, allowing priority pause to operate for both storage and network traffic. If the peer indicates a zero default priority (such as when the peer does not support priority pause), the device uses the "Non-Storage Priority" mode discussed below. Filtered Priority - This mode coerces the user priorities in each packet to avoid sending packets on the network function that may disrupt the converged adapter's storage traffic. The network device uses the next lower priority if a conflict exists. This mode is useful if multiple network priorities are necessary. Only a limited number of classes are supported for priority pause, so typically it does not function optimally in this mode. User Priority - This mode allows any user specified priority value and should be limited to cases where storage functions are not used. Disable Priority - The adapter always transmits either untagged packets with a priority value (802.1p) of zero.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Enhanced Transmission Selection	Disabled (default) Enabled	 Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2 Notes: For OCe11102 UCNAs only. ETS is not supported in conjunction with VMQ technology. ETS is not available if SR-IOV is enabled. 	If ETS is enabled, the driver filters transmit packets based on the 802.1p priority tag into multiple separate transmit rings. The network switch should be configured for ETS to group priorities into a priority group (or traffic class). Each priority group may be assigned a QoS bandwidth limit. For example, one network priority may to support priority flow control to achieve loss-less network traffic. Using separate hardware interfaces in the driver allows each priority to progress at a different rate, or pause temporarily without affecting the other priorities. When ETS is enabled, all configurations regarding bandwidth and priority flow control should be performed on the network switch. The adapter will learn the configuration using the DCBx protocol.
Flow Control	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) Rx Enable/Tx Disable Tx Enable/Rx Disable	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Flow control is almost always advantageous to avoid packet drops on the network. The switch or network peer must also have flow control enabled. The IEEE 802.3x Ethernet specification defines a control frame between peers that can request a pause in packet transmissions. This allows one system to request a temporary halt of all incoming traffic when receive buffer space is exhausted. The network device may be configured to respond to pause frames (Rx Enable) and/or to send pause frames (Tx Enable).
IP Checksum Offload (IPv4)	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) RX Enabled TX Enabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	This offloads the transmit and/or receive IPv4 checksum computation. Offloading checksums increases system efficiency.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Large Send Offload v1 (IPv4)	Disabled Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Large Send Offload allows the NIC hardware to segment large TCP packets (up to 64kB) into smaller packets (<= "Packet Size") that may be transmitted. This segmentation increases transmit efficiency for TCP applications that send large buffers. During segmentation, the hardware computes the IPv4 and TCP checksums for each individual packet. The Windows Version 1 LSO supports only IPv4.
Large Send Offload v2 (IPv4)	Disabled Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Large Send Offload allows the NIC hardware to segment large TCP packets (up to 64kB) into smaller packets (<= "Packet Size") that may be transmitted. This segmentation increases transmit efficiency for TCP applications that send large buffers. During segmentation, the hardware computes the IPv4 and TCP checksums for each individual packet. The Windows Version2 LSO supports larger offload sizes.
Large Send Offload v2 (IPv6)	Disabled Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Large Send Offload allows the NIC hardware to segment large TCP packets (up to 64kB) into smaller packets (less than the MTU) that may be transmitted. This segmentation increases transmit efficiency for TCP applications that send large buffers. During segmentation, the hardware computes the TCP checksums for each individual packet. IPv6 support requires LSO Version 2, included in Windows Server 2008 and later.
Maximum Number of RSS Processors	Min: 0 Max: The number CPU cores installed on your system.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	This property sets the maximum number of processors that can be used for RSS.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Maximum Number of RSS Queues	 Windows Server 2008; for OCe10102, OCe11102 legacy, OCe11102 advanced mode, LPe16000, OCe14000: Min 1, Max 4, default 4 Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2; OCe10102: Min 1, Max 4, Default 4 OCe11102, legacy: Min 1, Max 4, Default 4 OCe11102, advanced mode: Min 1, Max 8, Default 8 LPe16000: Min 1, Max 16, default 8 OCe14000: Min 1, Max 16, default 8 	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	When RSS is enabled, this parameter controls the number of receive queues. Typically, this is left at the maximum value. Windows reduces the number of queues as necessary based on the number of installed CPU cores. This value may be reduced during performance tuning for a particular application. It is possible that system performance may improve by limiting the number of RSS queues. For OCe11102, greater than 4 RSS queues requires Advanced Mode Support be enabled in the BIOS controller configuration.
Maximum RSS Processor Number	Min: 1 Max: The number of CPU cores installed on your system.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	This parameter sets the maximum processor number for the RSS CPUs. This is the highest processor number of any processors from the RSSMaxProcGroup parameter.
Network Address	Valid MAC Address The default setting is None.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 This overrides the permanent MAC address for the interface. The MAC address should follow this format XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX, where X is a hex digit (0-9 or A-F). The address cannot be a multicast address, which has the lowest bit in the first byte set. The address cannot be all zeros. For example, 01:00:00:00:00:00 is not valid, while 02:00:00:00:00:00 is valid.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
NetworkDirect	0—Disabled 1—Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2012 R2	The Network Direct feature enables an offloaded RDMA interface for SMB 3.0 network attached storage traffic using Microsoft's SMB Direct protocol.
			For best performance, priority flow control (PFC) should be configured on the network switch. Emulex defaults to priority (PFC) 5 for ROCE traffic, although it will still work without PFC enabled.
Network Direct MTU	256 512 1024 (default) 2048 4096	Windows Server 2012 R2	The maximum transmission unit (MTU) or frame size for ROCE traffic may be configured with this parameter.
NVGRE Task Offload (also known as Encapsulated Task Offload)	Disabled Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2 Note: For OCe14000-series adapters only.	NVGRE Task Offload enables the offloading of network virtualization using GRE tunneling on the NIC adapter. NVGRE offload works in conjunction with VMQ.
Packet Size	1514 (default) 9014 8222 4088	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Configures packet size for OneConnect NIC only. This parameter determines the maximum packet size transmitted and received on the interface. A 1514 byte frame size is standard, while larger packets are called jumbo frames. Using a higher frame size is generally more efficient, but it uses more system memory. A larger frame size also requires support on the network switch. Jumbo frames are IPv4-only frames; IPv6 packets will be fragmented by LSO. Switches and the peer should be configured to accept the specified packet size or the size will be negotiated to the common smallest size.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Performance Tuning	 Maximum performance (default) Dynamically balanced Statically balanced 	Windows Server 2012	 This parameter selects the driver algorithm for performance tuning, allowing you to balance raw networking throughput with overall system fairness among multiple devices and applications. Maximum Performance - This mode maximizes the network performance for this adapter. This is the recommended mode. However, in systems with a large number of network or storage adapters, this mode may limit the performance of other devices. Statically Balanced - This mode configures the network adapter to throttles CPU usage in all cases, allowing more balance among hardware devices and applications. If system responsiveness is poor, this mode may improve the overall system behavior. Dynamic balancing adjusts the network adapter's performance for the most stressful networking applications to ensure that all network adapters can share limited computer resources, yet it can maintain maximum performance when the system has resources available.

Table 3-3 Windows Server 2008	Windows Server 2008 R2,	Windows Server 2012,	and Windows Server 2012 R2 NIC
Driver Options (Continued)			

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Preferred NUMA Node	Not present or a value from 0-65535. Optional. No default setting is set.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Most modern multi-socket servers have separate memory controllers for each CPU socket. These systems have non-uniform memory access (NUMA) latencies for a given CPU core to access the local versus remote memory node.
			By setting this property, the driver attempts to use both memory and CPU cores from the given NUMA node.
			If the Preferred NUMA node is not set, the driver uses the preferred NUMA node as specified by the computer's BIOS.
			For best performance, the network applications should try to use memory and CPU affinity from the same NUMA node. This level of tuning is primarily noticeable when multiple adapters are running.
Receive Buffers	64-16384, inclusive The default value is 896.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	This determines the number of Ethernet receive buffers allocated per receive queue. This number may be adjusted by the driver as needed.
Receive CPU	"Not Present" or a value from 0 through (number of CPUs on the system-1). Optional. There is no default setting.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Sets the logical CPU used for processing the non-RSS receive packets. By default, the driver intelligently chooses a CPU in the system, so this parameter should only be used for advanced performance tuning. RSS packets are processed by the set of RSS CPUs provided by the Windows operating system.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Receive Side Scaling	Disabled Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Support for multiple RSS queues if enabled. RSS scales receive processing over multiple CPUs in parallel. This scaling typically improves application performance; however, it tends to increase CPU usage on low end machines. For the OCe11102 adapter, RSS is only supported on two primary adapters per device. For additional PCI functions, RSS does not appear in the Properties List.
Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv4)	Disabled (default on Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2) Enabled (default on Windows Server 2012)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 RSC merges multiple TCP segments and identifies them as a single coalesced unit to the operating system's TCP/IP stack. This reduces the per-packet receive processing overhead and CPU usage when standard 1514 byte sized frames are in use. Notes: If checksum offloads are disabled, RSC should also be disabled. RSC depends on checksum offloads for better performance. Both RSC (IPV4) and RSC (IPV6) are coerced to zero if TCP Connection Offload (IPV4) is enabled.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv6)	Disabled (default on Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2) Enabled (default on Windows Server 2012)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 RSC merges multiple TCP segments and identifies them as a single coalesced unit to the operating system's TCP/IP stack. This reduces the per-packet receive processing overhead and CPU usage when standard 1514 byte sized frames are in use. Notes: If checksum offloads are disabled, RSC should also be disabled. RSC depends on checksum offloads for better performance. Both RSC (IPV4) and RSC (IPV6) are coerced to zero if TCP Connection Offload (IPV4) is enabled.
RSS Base Processor Group	Min: 1 Max: 63	Windows Server 2012	This defines the base processor group for the RSS queues on the network adapter. A processor group contains 64 logical processors. This value may be modified in
			conjunction with the "RSS Base Processor Number" to explicitly select the desired RSS processors for the adapter.
RSS Base Processor Number	Min: 1 Max: 63	Windows Server 2012	This defines the base processor number for the RSS queues on the network adapter within the given processor group. A processor group contains 64 logical processors, so this value ranges from 0 to 63. This value may be modified in conjunction with the "RSS Base Processor Group" to explicitly select the desired RSS processors
RSS Max Processor Group	Min: 0 Max: The number of processor groups present on your system.	Windows Server 2012	for the adapter. RSS Max Processor Group allows you to set the maximum number of processor groups for the RSS CPUs

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
RSS Profile	Closest processor (default) Closest processor static NUMA scaling NUMA scaling static Conservative scaling	Windows Server 2012	The RSS Profile setting determines the RSS load balancing profile implemented by Microsoft for this network adapter. The "Closest Processor" settings will tend to localize the RSS CPUs to one NUMA node, allowing the device driver to allocate memory from the local node. The "NUMA Scaling" settings will use all NUMA nodes on the system, and the memory allocation will not be specific to a particular node. The driver will ignore the Preferred NUMA node setting.
SpeedDuplex	AutoNeg (default) 10GbpsFullDuplex 1GbpsFullDuplex	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	SpeedDuplex is used for selecting link speed, mainly for 10G BaseT Adapters. When it is set to the default, it auto negotiates 100Mbps/1Gbps/10Gbps with switch/peer. Link speed can be forced to 1Gbps, if option 1.0Gbps Full Duplex is selected. Link speed can be forced to 10Gbps, if option 10Gbps Full Duplex is selected. 10Gbps is the maximum supported link speed.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
SR-IOV	Disabled (default) Enabled	Note: For OCe11102, LPe16202, and OCe14000-series only. Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 SR-IOV enables the adapter to allocate virtual PCI functions for each virtual machine in Hyper-V. Note that the virtual switch and virtual network adapter must have SR-IOV enabled in the Hyper-V Manager. SR-IOV requires a platform with IOMMU virtualization (VT-d, AMD-Vi). When using SR-IOV, the Emulex NIC driver must be installed on each virtual function within the virtual machine. SR-IOV provides a direct hardware interface from the virtual machine to the networking adapter, which reduces latency and improves performance. The Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2 SR-IOV architecture establishes each Emulex virtual NIC with a corresponding emulated NIC. This allows the virtual machine to seamlessly failover to the emulated NIC if SR-IOV is disabled. It also allows Live Migration to another system, regardless of the installed NIC hardware. Note: The driver currently supports the following virtual functions for the following adapter families: OCe11100-series adapters support a maximum of 24 virtual functions/physical function. O4-port 10 Gb: 31 virtual functions/physical function O1-port 40 Gb: 63 virtual functions/physical function

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
TCP Checksum Offload (IPv4)	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) RX Enabled TX Enabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	TCP Checksum Offload (IPv4) offloads the transmit and/or receive IPv4 TCP checksum computation. Offloading checksums increases system efficiency.
TCP Checksum Offload (IPv6)	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) RX Enabled TX Enabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	TCP Checksum Offload (IPv6) offloads the transmit and/or receive IPv6 TCP checksum computation. Offloading checksums increases system efficiency.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
TCP Connection Offload (IPv4)	Enabled (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 Note: TCP Connection Offload is not supported on 16Gb UCNAs. If TCP offload is enabled, the device offloads the entire TCP protocol, including ACK processing, retransmits, and timers. Applications that prepost receive buffers (before the data arrives) may avoid data copies in the receive path, which substantially increases the system efficiency and data rates. Windows does not offload TCP connections if any of the following are enabled: Network Load Balancing IPSEC Network Address Translation NDIS 5.1 Intermediate Drivers TCP offload must be enabled in the windows operating system with the shell command: netsh int tcp set global chimney=enabled This parameter appears disabled if the firmware installed on your device does not support TCP connection offload. Upgrading the firmware may resolve this issue. View the "Statistics" property page to ensure that TCP connection Offload is working. Note: Both RSC (IPV4) and RSC (IPV6) are coerced to zero if TCP Connection Offload is working.

Table 3-3 Windows Server 2008,	Windows Server 2008 R2,	Windows Server 2012,	and Windows Server 2012 R2 NIC
Driver Options (Continued)			

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
TCP Offload Optimization	Optimize Latency Optimize Throughput (default)	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	This parameter only applies to TCP connection offload, which must be enabled in the "Protocol Offloads" section. Most applications perform better with TCP Offload Optimization set to "Optimize Throughput" which handles large data transfers with minimal CPU impact. Setting this parameter to "Optimize Latency" causes receive data to be delivered to the application without waiting for a TCP PSH. This causes additional receive indications that typically decrease total throughput.
Transmit Buffers	64-256, inclusive The default setting is 256.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Transmit Buffers sets the number of Ethernet transmits that may be posted to the hardware at any given time. The default value is sufficient to achieve maximum performance. Reducing this value conserves system memory.
Transmit CPU	"Not Present" or a value from 0 through (number of CPUs -1). Optional. There is no default setting.	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	Sets the CPU to be used to process transmit completions. By default, the driver intelligently chooses a CPU in the system, so this parameter should only be set for advanced performance tuning.
Transmit Side Scaling (TSS)	Enabled Disabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	TSS distributes transmit completions to be processed on multiple CPUs in parallel. It uses the RSS CPU table for distribution and therefore requires RSS to be enabled.
UDP Checksum Offload (IPv4)	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) RX Enabled TX Enabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	UDP offload checksum settings offload the transmit and/or receive IPv4 UDP checksum computation. Offloading checksums increases system efficiency.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
UDP Checksum Offload (IPv6)	Disabled RX and TX Enabled (default) RX Enabled TX Enabled	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	User Datagram Protocol (UDP) offload checksum settings offload the transmit and/or receive IPv6 UDP checksum computation. Offloading checksums increases system efficiency.
Virtual Machine Queues	Enabled (default) Disabled	Note: For OCe11102, LPe16202, and OCe14000 only. VMQs require Windows Server 2008 R2 or later with Hyper-V.	VMQs are dedicated hardware receive queues for virtual machines that filter receive packets based on the destination MAC address and/or VLAN. Receive buffers can be allocated for each queue from VM memory. This improves network throughput by distributing processing of network traffic for multiple VMs among multiple processors. It reduces CPU utilization by offloading receive packet filtering to NIC hardware. VMQs prove beneficial when 4 or more VMs are in use.
Virtual Machine Queues Lookahead Split	Enabled (default) Disabled	Note: For OCe11102 UCNAs only. Not applicable for LPe16202 and OCe14000-series adapters. Windows Server 2008 R2	 VMQ enables direct DMA to VM memory. Lookahead improves packet steering performance by PCI prefetching adjacent header buffer into a cache when examining a packet. Header buffers are continuous in physical memory since they belong to one pool. For OCe11102, Lookahead split requires Advanced Mode Support and is enabled in the BIOS controller configuration. Note: Lookahead split is not supported for jumbo frames.
Virtual Machine Queues Transmit	Enabled (default) Disabled	Note: For OCe11102, LPe16202, and OCe14000-series adapters only. Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	If this option is enabled with VMQs, separate transmit queues are created for each VM network interface. Send and receive interrupts for a VM network interface are processed on the same CPUs. Separate transmit queues increase system overall CPU utilization, but offer greater system scalability.

Option Name	Acceptable Values	Supported Operating Systems	Definition
VLAN Identifier (802.1q)	Not Present (default) 1 to 4094	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2	 If selected, the adapter adds a VLAN tag to all transmitted packets, and only receives packets with the matching VLAN tag. Notes: This property should not be used when the Emulex Teaming Driver is enabled. In that case, VLAN configuration should be performed in the Teaming Driver application. This property should not be used with Hyper-V. In that case, the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager should be used to configure VLANs on each virtual machine.
Wake on LAN	 Enabled (default) Disabled Notes: For Windows Server 2012 inbox drivers, "Wake on LAN" is disabled by default and not overwritten on driver updates. "Wake on LAN" is disabled by default on OCe10102-series adapters. 	Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 Windows Server 2012 Windows Server 2012 R2 Note: For OCe11102 only.	Enabling "Wake on LAN" allows the network device to wake up the computer when a magic packet is received during standby. In Blade server configurations, "Wake On Lan" is only supported on two primary adapters per device. Additional PCI functions appear disabled.

Configuring Windows Server NIC Driver Parameters

The Windows Server NIC drivers support driver options through the Advanced Property page in Windows Device Manager.

Modifying Advanced Properties

Modify the advanced properties for the driver for Windows with the Windows Device Manager. For more information on advanced properties, see "Network Driver Performance Tuning" on page 107.

To modify the advanced properties:

- 1. Enter the Windows Device Manager using one of the following options:
 - Click Start> Control Panel>System and click the Device Manager hyperlink.
 - Click Start>Run, and type devmgmt.msc.Click OK.

The Windows Device Manager is displayed.

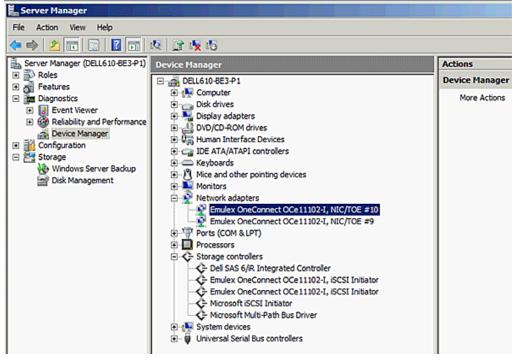


Figure 3-1 Partial View of Windows Device Manager

- 2. Right-click the network adapter for which you wish to modify advanced properties.
- 3. Click Properties, and click the Advanced tab (Figure 3-2 on page 64).
- 4. From the list of properties, click the property (parameter) you want to modify, then select the new value of the property by selecting from the Value list.
- 5. Click OK.

Note: Modifying properties causes the network driver to reload and some TCP connections may be temporarily dropped.

Figure 3-2 NIC Advanced Properties in Windows Server 2008

Statistics Property Page

Use the Statistics Properties tab to view the performance of the device and network. By viewing the statistics properties, you can troubleshoot issues and performance tune the system, for example you can assess how different device properties change the performance of the system.

To view the statistics properties:

- 1. Enter the Windows Device Manager using one of the following options:
 - Click Start> Control Panel>System and click the Device Manager hyperlink.
 - Click Start>Run, then type devmgmt.msc and click OK.

The Windows Device Manager is displayed (Figure 3-1).

- 2. Right-click the network adapter for which you wish to view the statistics properties.
- 3. Click **Properties**, then click the **Statistics** tab (Figure 3-3 on page 65).

4. From the list of properties, select the property (parameter) you want to view.

	IneConne					·	
Driver	Details	Events	Reso	ources		er Managem	ent
General	Advance	ced S	itatus	Statisti	cs	Diagnosti	cs
⋑⋐⋿	MUL	EX I	Device St	atistics			
Statistic				Value	Unit	s	~
Transmit T	hroughput			0	bits	/sec	
Receive T	hroughput			0	bits.	/sec	
Transmit B	ytes			74.1T	byte	es	
Receive B	, ytes			11.2T	byte	es	
Transmit P	acket Rate			0	pac	kets/sec	
Receive P	acket Rate			0	pac	kets/sec	
Transmit P	ackets			2.9G	pac	kets	
Receive P	ackets			1.4G	pac	packets	
RSS Receive Packets		1.4G		packets			
Transmit Flow Control Pause Requests		16.1k		packets			
Receive Flow Control Pause Requests			4.0		kets		
TCP Offloads Currently Established		0		nections			
TCP Offloads TCP Offload Retransmits		0		nections			
				0		kets	
	id Receive [id Transmit F			0		kets /sec	
	ad Transmit i ad Receive F			0		/sec /sec	
		tate		0	DITS.		
VMQs Allocated Interrupt Rate		1.2	int/				
Receive Drops No Memory (DMA limited)		352.6k		kets			
Receive Drops No Fragments (CPU limited)		88 4M		kets	~		
< III >							
<u>R</u> eset							
				(ж	Cano	el

Figure 3-3 NIC Statistics Properties in Windows Server 2008

Table 3-4	NIC Driver	Properties	Statistics
-----------	------------	-------------------	------------

Statistic Name	Description	
Transmit Throughput	The data rate for this adapter on the network, including all packet headers. It is expressed in terms of bits/sec, where 1 byte = 8 bits. This is computed as the average over approximately 3 seconds.	
Receive Throughput	The receive rate for this adapter.	
Transmit Bytes	The total number of bytes transmitted by this adapter, since the last statistics reset or the last driver reload.	
Receive Bytes	The total number of bytes received by this adapter.	
Transmit Packet Rate	The rate of transmit packets for the adapter.	
Receive Packet Rate	The rate of receive packets for the adapter.	
Transmit Packets	The total number of packets transmitted by the adapter since the last statistics reset, or the driver was reloaded.	
Receive Packets	The total number of packets received. This includes both RSS and non-RSS packets.	

Statistic Name	Description
RSS Receive Packets	The number of receive packets that were suitable for RSS.
Transmit Flow Control Pause Requests	The number of times the network adapter sent a PAUSE frame to request that the peer stop sending data temporarily. This indicates a potential bottleneck in the system. Typically, this bottleneck is the result of the DMA of packets from the adapter to host memory.
Receive Flow Control Pause Requests	The number of times the network adapter received a PAUSE frame from the peer. This indicates a potential bottleneck in the attached switch or network peer device. This statistic only increments when the switch is correctly configured for flow control.
TCP Offloads Current Established	The current number of TCP connections offloaded to the adapter's TOE.
TCP Offloads	The total number of TCP connections that have been offloaded since the last statistics reset, or the driver was reloaded.
TCP Offload Retransmits	The number of packets retransmitted for TCP offloaded connections.
TCP Offload Receive Drops	The number of packets dropped by in the offloaded TCP stack. These drops may the result of TCP protocol errors or bottlenecks in the system for consuming receive data.
TCP Offload Transmit Rate	The transmit data rate of the offloaded TCP connections. This is the portion of the total "Transmit Throughput" contributed by offloaded TCP connections.
TCP Offload Receive Rate	The receive data rate of the offloaded TCP connections.
VMQs Allocated	The current number of Virtual Machine Queues allocated.
Interrupt Rate	The number of interrupts per second generated by the adapter. The interrupt rate may be tuned by modifying the Interrupt Moderation parameter.

 Table 3-4
 NIC Driver Properties Statistics (Continued)

Statistic Name	Description
Receive Drops No Memory (DMA Limited)	The number of packets dropped as a result of insufficient buffers posted by the driver. This is generally the result of the CPU core used for any receive queue reaching 100%. The system may lack sufficient CPU cycles to post receive buffers at the necessary rate. A lot of small packets lead to this behavior on almost any CPU, since the processing time for small packets is very high in the networking stack. Using a teaming driver may also lead to this, since it increases the CPU load during receive.
	Increasing the number of "Receive Buffers" in the advanced property page may alleviate some of these drops, in particular if the drops are the result of bursts of small receive packets on the network. However, if the CPU is the limit, increasing the buffer resources does not help because the driver cannot post them fast enough.
	Enabling RSS is another strategy to reduce drops since it allows the NIC driver to use additional CPU cores. The number of RSS queues may be increased to increase the total number of posted buffers available to the adapter.
	Enabling RSC can also reduce CPU consumption in the networking stack by combining multiple TCP packets into one larger packet.
	For best performance, the system BIOS should be set to "Maximum Performance" or manually disable C-states. The transitions to low power, C-states may cause a steady trickle of drops due to increased latencies from packet reception until the driver's interrupt processing code is invoked.
Receive Drops No Fragments (CPU Limited)	The number of receive packets dropped because of a DMA bottleneck from the network adapter to host memory. This may be caused by bottlenecks in either the PCIe bus or main memory.
	In the Status tab of the Custom property page, the Emulex NIC reports the PCIe link parameters and the maximum supported parameters. For example, installing a 8x device in a 4x PCIe slot cuts the available PCIe bandwidth in half. The PCIe MTU and Read Request size are also reported, and these may be configurable in the system BIOS for the computer.
	The performance of the main memory is the other major concern for networking throughput. The ideal situation is using high speed memory with all memory channels populated per CPU - typically 3 or 4 DIMMs per CPU socket. For the ideal performance, the same DIMM size should be used in each memory channel to allow perfect memory channel interleaving. Features such as memory sparing or memory mirroring dramatically decrease the memory bandwidth of the system and cause drops.
	TCP connection offload may lead to increased drops as a result of "no memory". If TCP connection offload is used, enabling flow control may reduce the drops. Alternatively, disabling TCP connection offload may improve performance.

 Table 3-4
 NIC Driver Properties Statistics (Continued)

Statistic Name	Description
CRC Errors	The number of packets dropped as the result of CRC errors on the layer 2 Ethernet packet. In products that expose multiple PCIe functions per Ethernet port, this statistic is only incremented for the lowest PCI function per port since the packet cannot be further classified because of the error.
Receive IP Checksum Errors	The number of receive packets with an incorrect IPv4 checksum. These packets are provided to the TCP/IP stack for disposal in the operating system.
Receive UDP Checksum Errors	The number of receive packets with an incorrect UDP checksum. These packets are provided to the TCP/IP stack for disposal in the operating system.
Receive TCP Errors	The number of receive packets with an incorrect TCP checksum. These packets are provided to the TCP/IP stack for disposal in the operating system.
Tunnels allocated	Number of interfaces converted to tunnel interfaces. Used with NVGRE offload enabled and on.
Tenants allocated	Number of interfaces converted into tenant interfaces. Used with NVGRE offload enabled and on and VMQ.
Virtual Functions allocated	Number of PCIe virtual functions created by the SR-IOV supporting adapter.

Table 3-4 NIC Driver Properties Statistics (Continued)

Using OCCFG for Windows NIC Driver Options

The occfg.exe program supports configuring parameters for the network functions on Emulex Ethernet adapters either through interactive mode with a set of menus, or command line mode that is scriptable.

If you performed a standard driver installation, the occfg.exe is located in the following directory:

```
Directory of C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot
Installer\NIC\Drivers\NDIS\<platform>\<OS>
```

The following section describes how to use the occfg.exe program to configure the Windows device driver from the command line.

Displaying OCCFG Help

To display help, use the -? option by typing occfg -? on the command line. The following text will be displayed:

```
OneConnect Network Config (0.0.9999.0)
Copyright 2011 Emulex
Usage: occfg.exe [-options]
Running with no arguments will display a
```

Running with no arguments will display a menu to select the adapter and parameters to modify. Using the command line arguments allow scripting this process.

Options: -a str[,str] Selects all adapters with any of the given strings in the connection or device name. If omitted, occfg prompts for an adapter from a list. -s name=v, [name=v] Sets the parameter's value and reloads the devices. -g name[,name] Gets parameter value. -r Skips reloading the driver when setting a parameter. – f Force reloading the driver. Force disabling the driver. Force enabling the driver. - + List available adapters and exit. -1 -T filename Saves tinylog to a binary file. -L filename Loads a binary file and replays tinylog. Reset all parameters to the default values. -x Show all registry parameter values. -p Show all driver parameter values. -q Show help text for all parameters. -h -? Show this help. Continously downloads ARM log into a file. -M module=trace level [,module=trace Arguments set a specific trace level on listed level] modules. Default argument is all=error. Refer to ARM firmware for list of modules and debug trace levels. This is a special command argument. Examples: Run interactively with menus: occfq.exe Set a parameter on all Emulex adapters: occfg.exe -a Emulex -s rss=1 Set multiple parameters on one adapter adapter: occfg.exe -a "Local Area Connection 23" -s "Flow=3,rss=0"

Selecting an Adapter

In batch mode, the "-a" parameter should be followed by a substring that is contained within the adapter name. The name is a combination of the device manager name (for example, Emulex OneConnect OCe11102) and the network connection name (for example, Local Area Connection). The later may be modified by using the Windows Network Connections applet (ncpa.cpl).

The most typical scenario involves setting parameters the same for all ports of a network adapter. This is accomplished by specifying "-a emulex".

Often it is convenient to rename the connections to have a common name to easily operate on a group. For example, naming the network connections "dot1, dot2, dot3" allows operating on all adapters using the substring "dot", or on any individual adapter by specifying the exact name such as "dot1".

Configuring Device Parameters

The occfg program is used to query and modify registry parameters for Emulex network devices. The registry keys are stored at:

```
HKLM/System/CurrentControlSet/Control/Class/{4D36E972-E325-11CE-BFC 108002bE10318}/####
```

where "####" is the device instance number.

The occfg program allows you to modify registry keys on a set of network devices. Once modified, the driver must be restarted to apply these parameters. In batch mode, occfg will automatically restart the driver when changing a parameter, and in interactive mode there is a menu item to select to restart the driver.

In batch mode the commands to modify parameters will look like the following examples:

```
occfg -a emulex -s rss=0
occfg -a emulex -s "Interrupt Moderation=4,Flow Control=3"
```

The parameter name must uniquely specify one parameter to modify, but it may be only a substring on the full parameter name. For example, the following are all equivalent:

```
occfg -a emulex -s "Flow Control=3"
occfg -a emulex -s flow=3
occfg -a emulex -s control=3
```

Note that the parameter name is generally the text readable parameter description name, but you may specify the exact registry key name as well. Microsoft has defined many documented standard registry key names that start with a '*' character. The '*' is not a wildcard — it is part of the registry key name. The following examples are equivalent:

```
occfg -a emulex -s "Flow Control=3"
occfg -a emulex -s "*FlowControl=3"
```

Note: Quotes are required if the parameter name contains a space character

To modify a parameter without a driver reload, use "-r". This is useful to modify several parameters in sequence, then force a reload of the driver at the end. To force a driver reload use the "-f" parameter.

The following is an example of such a sequence:

```
occfg -a emulex -r -s rss=0
occfg -a emulex -r -s "interrupt moderation=0"
occfg -a emulex -f
```

Registry keys may be set to two special values:

- The "delete" value will cause the key to be entirely deleted and the driver will use the default value. This is appropriate for keys that are optional, such as the "Network Address".
- The "default" value will set the key to the driver's default value. If the key is optional, the default value may be equivalent to deleting the key.

For example:

```
occfg -a emulex -s vlan=delete
occfg -a emulex -s rss=default
```

Viewing Device Parameters

The occfg.exe program can query device parameters from either the registry or the device driver (if running driver version $\geq 2.103.x.x$).

The registry and driver values may differ until the driver is reloaded. If the driver reload fails for any reason (such as another application has an open handle to the device driver), it may be necessary to reboot the system to apply the registry changes.

Note: If the driver has been disabled or if the driver failed to load due to any error, the driver query will return the error, "Failed to query driver for the parameter".

The following are batch mode examples:

```
occfg -a emulex -g "Interrupt Moderation"
occfg -a "(Local Area Connection)" -g interrupt,rss
Emulex OneConnect OCell102-I, NIC/TOE (Local Area Connection):
  [Registry] Interrupt Moderation = 4 (Adaptive [Default])
  [Driver] Interrupt Moderation = 4 (Adaptive [Default])
Emulex OneConnect OCell102-I, NIC/TOE (Local Area Connection):
  [Registry] RSS = 0 (Disable)
  [Driver] RSS = 0 (Disable)
```

Resetting All Parameters

Resetting all parameters will restore the default values for each adapter. This is accomplished by using the command:

occfg -a emulex -x

Displaying All Parameters

To display the current value of all parameters, use either "-p" or "-q" command line options. This shows the registry value or driver value of the parameter, or both when using "-pq" together.

For example:

```
occfg.exe -a "SLOT 5 Port 1" -pq
OneConnect Network Config (10.2.164.0)
Copyright 2011 Emulex
Emulex OneConnect OCe14102-UX-D 2-port PCIe 10GbE CNA (SLOT 5 Port 1)
  Display all properties.
   [Registry] Class of Service (802.1p) = 1 (Auto Priority Pause)
             Class of Service (802.1p) = 1 (Auto Priority Pause)
   [Driver]
   [Registry] Encapsulated Task Offload = 1 (Enabled)
   [Driver]
             Encapsulated Task Offload = 1 (Enabled)
   [Registry] Enhanced Transmission Selection = 0 (Disabled)
   [Driver]
             Enhanced Transmission Selection = 0 (Disabled)
   [Registry] Flow Control = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled)
   [Driver]
             Flow Control = 0 (Disabled)
   [Registry] IPv4 Checksum Offload = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled)
   [Driver] IPv4 Checksum Offload = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled)
   [Registry] Interrupt Moderation = 4 (Adaptive (default))
   [Driver]
             Interrupt Moderation = 4 (Adaptive (default))
   [Registry] Large Send Offload V1 (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Driver]
             Large Send Offload V1 (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Registry] Large Send Offload V2 (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Driver]
             Large Send Offload V2 (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Registry] Large Send Offload V2 (IPv6) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Driver] Large Send Offload V2 (IPv6) = 1 (Enabled)
   [Registry] Maximum Number of RSS Processors = <not set>
             Maximum Number of RSS Processors = <not set>
   [Driver]
   [Registry] Maximum Number of RSS Queues = 6
   [Driver]
             Maximum Number of RSS Queues = 6
   [Registry] Maximum RSS Processor Number = <not set>
```

[Driver] Maximum RSS Processor Number = <not set> [Registry] Network Address = <not set> [Driver] Network Address = <not set> [Registry] NetworkDirect = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] NetworkDirect = 1 (Enabled) [Registry] NetworkDirect MTU = 1024 (1024) [Driver] NetworkDirect MTU = 1024 (0x400) (1024) [Registry] Packet Size = 9014 (9014) [Driver] Packet Size = 9014 (0x2336) (9014) [Registry] Performance Tuning = 0 (Maximum Performance) Performance Tuning = 0 (Maximum Performance) [Driver] [Registry] Preferred NUMA Node = <not set> [Driver] Preferred NUMA Node = <not set> [Registry] RSS Base Processor Group = <not set> [Driver] RSS Base Processor Group = <not set> [Registry] RSS Base Processor Number = <not set> [Driver] RSS Base Processor Number = <not set> [Registry] RSS Max Processor Group = <not set> [Driver] RSS Max Processor Group = <not set> [Registry] RSS Profile = 1 (Closest Processor) [Driver] RSS Profile = 1 (Closest Processor) [Registry] Receive Buffers = 896 [Driver] Receive Buffers = 1280 (0x500) [Registry] Receive CPU = <not set> [Driver] Receive CPU = <not set> [Registry] Receive Side Scaling = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Receive Side Scaling = 1 (Enabled) [Registry] Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv4) = 1 (Enabled) [Registry] Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv6) = 1 (Enabled) Recv Segment Coalescing (IPv6) = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] [Registry] SR-IOV = 0 (Disabled)

[Driver] SR-IOV = 0 (Disabled) [Registry] TCP Checksum Offload (IPv4) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Driver] TCP Checksum Offload (IPv4) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Registry] TCP Checksum Offload (IPv6) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Driver] TCP Checksum Offload (IPv6) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Registry] Transmit = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Transmit = 1 (Enabled) [Registry] Transmit Buffers = 256 (256) [Driver] Transmit Buffers = 256 (0x100) (256) [Registry] Transmit CPU = <not set> [Driver] Transmit CPU = <not set> [Registry] Transmit Side Scaling = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Transmit Side Scaling = 0 (Disabled) [Registry] UDP Checksum Offload (IPv4) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Driver] UDP Checksum Offload (IPv4) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Registry] UDP Checksum Offload (IPv6) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Driver] UDP Checksum Offload (IPv6) = 3 (Rx & Tx Enabled) [Registry] VLAN Identifier (802.1q) = 102 [Driver] VLAN Identifier (802.1q) = 102 (0x66)[Registry] Virtual Machine Queues = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Virtual Machine Queues = 1 (Enabled) [Registry] Wake On LAN = 1 (Enabled) [Driver] Wake On LAN = 0 (Disabled)

Using Interactive Mode

The occfg.exe program also supports the interactive mode with a set of menus. To start this utility in interactive mode, run occfg.exe from a command console and do the following:

- 1. A list of adapters displays on which to operate. Type either a number of the list or a substring from any part of the name (for more information, see "Selecting an Adapter" on page 70).
- 2. The program prompts for an operation, such as modifying or querying a parameter value. Follow the prompt.

- 3. The program provides a list of available registry parameters to modify or query. Type either the number of the corresponding option or a substring in the parameter name. The substring must uniquely identify the parameter or occfg will display all potential options.
- 4. To apply the parameters, select the menu item to exit and reload the drivers. Pressing control -c at any point may leave modifications in the registry, but the driver does not use the new parameters until is reloaded.

Parameter Help

In interactive mode, setting a parameter will display help text and information regarding the legal values for each parameter. This information can be dumped for all parameters by specifying the -h option.

The following is an example help text for the RSS parameter:

```
RSS:
Receive Side Scaling (RSS) scales receive processing over multiple
CPUs in parallel. This scaling typically improves application
performance; however, it tends to increase CPU usage on low end
machines.
RSS is only supported on two primary adapters per device. It will
appear disabled for additional PCI functions in blade server
configurations.
RSS requires Windows 2008 and later.
Registry Key: *RSS
Default Value : 1 (Enable)
Valid Values :
    0 = Disable
    1 = Enable
```

Using SR-IOV with Emulex Devices

Advisory

OCe11100-series adapters may have an issue recovering from the corrupted use of SR-IOV. Assigning an SR-IOV device to a virtual machine could leave the system vulnerable and lead to instability. It is strongly recommended that you assign SR-IOV devices only to virtual machines that run trusted workloads, or consider disabling SR-IOV.

This advisory is highlighting a use case where a "rogue" [non-Emulex] digitally signed driver is installed by the system administrator on a virtual machine. It is then possible for that rogue driver to crash an OCe11100-series networking adapter. While there are many benefits to using SR-IOV with virtualized workloads, these benefits should be weighed against the potential risks in doing so. As an example, see the Microsoft TechNet Blog cited in the link below where the benefits and usage of the Windows Server 2012 Hyper-V switch versus NIC SR-IOV are noted:

http://www.emulex.com/downloads/sr-iov.html

Notes:

- The operating system comes with an Emulex inbox driver. Emulex recommends that you use the Emulex out-of-box driver.
- For a list of supported drivers and adapters, see the latest Windows Drivers release notes, which are available for download from the Emulex website.
- SR-IOV is not supported with RoCE configurations.
- SR-IOV is not supported with UMC.
- SR-IOV is supported only on the following adapters in NIC-mode installed on Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2 with an installed Emulex NIC driver:
 - OCe11000-series NIC adapters
 - o LPe16202 CFAs
 - o OCe14000-series adapters
- The driver supports the following virtual functions for the following adapter families:
 - OCe11100-series adapters support a maximum of 24 virtual functions/port.
 - OCe14000-series adapters support a maximum of:
 - 2-port 10 Gb: 31 virtual functions/physical function
 - 4-port 10 Gb: 31 virtual functions/physical function
 - 1-port 40 Gb: 63 virtual functions/physical function

Server BIOS Configuration

SR-IOV requires support in the server chipset beyond standard virtualization technologies, including operating system control of PCIe and interrupt remapping. The server may have BIOS options to control SR-IOV, and typically these are disabled by default. The following may need modification in your system BIOS during boot:

- Enable "Virtualization", such as Intel VT-x or AMD-V. This is required for any virtual machine.
- Explicitly enable SR-IOV in the system BIOS. The specific name for this option varies between vendors. For instance it may be called Intel VT-d (Virtualization Technology for Direct I/O), AMD-Vi (AMD I/O Virtualization Technology), or IOMMU.

Emulex PXESelect Configuration for SR-IOV

The Emulex OCe11000 family of adapters requires enabling firmware support for SR-IOV within the Emulex PXESelect BIOS. See the *Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols User Manual* for more information.

To enable firmware support in the PXESelect BIOS:

- 1. Press **<Ctrl+ P>** during the Emulex PXE Select splash screen as the server boots. A screen appears showing global options.
- 2. Set the following options to use SR-IOV:

- Advanced mode = Enable
- Universal Multichannel (UMC) = Disable
- 3. Save the settings and enable SR-IOV for each PCI function. The server reboots after this modification.

SR-IOV Server Validation

Use the following Microsoft PowerShell commands to determine if your server is capable of SR-IOV.

- Get-VmHost
- Get-NetAdapterSriov
- Get-VmNetworkAdapter
- Get-VmSwitch

See Microsoft documentation for more information.

Note: Early SR-IOV capable chip sets had errors that may prevent SR-IOV from operating in Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2. The PowerShell command "Get-VmHost | fl *" includes 'IovSupportReasons' that indicates if the chipset suffers from this issue.

Enabling SR-IOV on Unqualified Servers

If Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2 detect an issue with the system I/O remapping hardware, you may still be able to use SR-IOV by explicitly enabling SR-IOV in the registry using 'IovEnableOverride'.

Notes:

- Emulex recommends this procedure for trusted virtual machines only.
- It is recommended that you make a backup of your registry before you make any changes.
 - **Caution:** Using registry editor can cause serious issues that may require you to reinstall the computer's operating system. Emulex cannot guarantee that issues resulting from changes you make to the registry can be repaired. Use the registry editor at your own risk.

Backing Up and Editing the Registry

- 1. Create a system restore point.
- 2. Open the registry editor by running regedit.exe at the command prompt.
- 3. Select the hive (the top level key) and export it to a .reg file.
- 4. Save the .reg file to a location off of the server as a precaution.
- 5. Navigate to: HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Virtualization
- 6. Create a DWORD type entry named "IovEnableOverride".
- 7. Set the value of "IovEnableOverride" to 1.

- 8. Reboot the system.
- 9. If the system does not boot, press <F8> and select Previous Known Good, or use the system restore function while booting from an operating system install disc or recovery disc.
- 10. If the system boots but does not work properly, restore from a previous restore point, or import the saved .reg file and reboot.

Verifying the Driver Version

To verify the Emulex device driver meets the minimum requirements:

- 1. Select Server Manager>Dashboard>Tools>Computer Management.
- 2. Click Device Manager. The Device Manager opens.

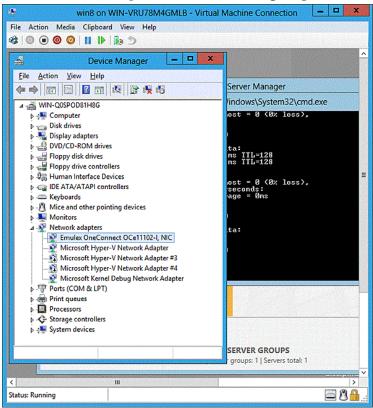


Figure 3-4 Device Manager for Windows Server 2012

3. Open the **Network Adapters** item, find the Emulex device and right-click. Select **Properties** from the context-menu. The Properties dialog box opens showing the Driver page. The Driver page contains the driver version number.

				_				
General	Advance		Status		Statis			nostics
Driver	Details	Event	s R	esour	ces	Pow	er Manag	gement
<u>.</u>	mulex OneCon	nect O	Ce11102-	I, NIC	/TOE			
[Driver Provider:	Emu	ulex					
[Driver Date:	2/1	5/2012					
[Driver Version:	0.0.	9999.341	7				
[)igital Signer:	Emu	ulex					
<u>R</u> oll Ba	Driver ck Driver	If the c	date the d levice fail o the prev	s afte	r updat	ing the o	driver, rol	
Dis	able	Disable	es the sel	ected	device			
<u>U</u> ni	nstall	To uni	nstall the	driver	(Advar	nced).		
						ОК		Cancel

Figure 3-5 Emulex NIC Driver Properties Page

4. Click Driver Details. A window opens displaying the driver name.

Enabling SR-IOV in the Emulex Device

To enable SR-IOV in the Emulex device:

- 1. Select Server Manager>Dashboard>Tools>Computer Management.
- 2. Click Device Manager. The Device Manager opens. See Figure 3-4 on page 78.
- 3. Open the **Network Adapters** item, find the Emulex device and right-click. Select **Properties** from the context-menu. The Properties dialog box opens. See Figure 3-5.
- 4. Click the Advanced tab. The Advanced Property Configuration page opens.

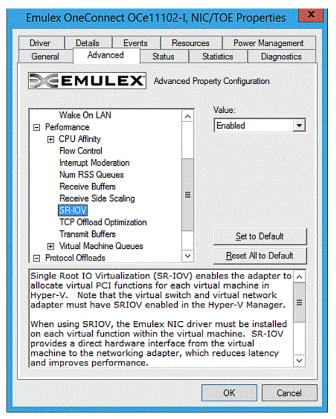


Figure 3-6 Emulex NIC Advanced Properties Page

- 5. Select SR-IOV from the list and select **Enabled** from the Value list.
- **Note:** You must configure Hyper-V to create an SR-IOV enabled virtual machine. See Microsoft Hyper-V documentation for more information.

Hyper-V

The Hyper-V role must be added using the Server Manager. Once the Hyper-V role is added, you can enable SR-IOV in the Hyper-V Manager by:

- Creating the virtual switch
- Creating each virtual NIC

See Microsoft documentation for more information.

Note: Make sure SR-IOV is enabled on the server and on the Emulex adapter prior to configuring the Hyper-V virtual switch.

The Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2 Servers treat SR-IOV as an offload - an active-active team with virtual function and an emulated adapter. That means each Emulex SR-IOV adapter is accompanied by a fully functional, emulated NIC. The emulated NIC is named "Microsoft Virtual Network Adapter," and the TCP/IP stack is only bound to this device.

Once the Emulex driver is loaded, the Emulex SR-IOV virtual function is used for all unicast receive and transmit traffic. The emulated NIC handles multicast and broadcast traffic. If SR-IOV is disabled, the Emulex adapter is removed from the virtual machine, and all traffic automatically uses the emulated NIC. This technology allows Live Migration of Virtual Machines when using SR-IOV.

Note: If multiple adapters are added to the virtual machine, Emulex recommends using MAC addresses to map the Emulex Network adapter to the corresponding Microsoft Virtual Network adapters.

Verifying SR-IOV

When SR-IOV is working, it can be verified by opening the Device Manager within the virtual machine and examining the information about the transmit and receive packets that are using the SR-IOV virtual function. This is the final verification that SR-IOV is working correctly. SR-IOV can also be verified from the host Hyper-V server.

Note: Because current versions of Windows Server 2012 require that SR-IOV be enabled in different locations prior to creating the virtual switch, if SR-IOV is not working, delete the virtual switch and create it again. The SR-IOV option is always available during switch creation.

Verifying SR-IOV from the Virtual Machine

To verify the SR-IOV from within the virtual machine:

1. From within the virtual machine, select:

Server Manager>Dashboard>Tools>Computer Management

- 2. Click Device Manager. The Device Driver opens. See Figure 3-4 on page 78.
- 3. Open the **Network Adapters** item, click the Emulex device and right-click. Select **Properties** from the context-menu. The Properties dialog box opens showing the Driver page. See Figure 3-5 on page 79.

Note: The Emulex adapter may initially appear as a "Network Adapter" before the driver is loaded.

4. Select the **Statistics** tab. Information about the transmit and receive packets that are using the SR-IOV virtual function are displayed; specifically, the number of "Transmit Bytes" and "Receive Bytes" that are transmitted directly to hardware from the virtual function. If this number is greater than zero, the device is successfully using the SR-IOV direct hardware access.

General	Advanced	Status Device St	Statistics atistics	Diagnosti	cs
	MULE	Device St	atistics		
Receive T Transmit E Receive E Transmit F Receive F Transmit F Receive F RSS Rece Transmit F Receive F TCP Offloi TCP Offloi	ytes acket Rate acket Rate ackets ackets ive Packets low Control Pau: ads Currently Est ads ad Retransmits ad Receive Drop ad Transmit Rate ad Receive Rate cated	se Requests ablished os	Value 9.8G 26.5M 57.8G 145.2M 808.8k 57.0k 38.1M 2.5M 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Units bits/sec bits/sec bytes packets/sec packets/sec packets packets packets packets connections connections packets bits/sec bits/sec ducues int/sec	
Interrupt R Receive D	late Props No Memory	(DMA limited)	0	packets	
		nts (CPU limited)	ō	packets	1

Figure 3-7 Emulex NIC Statistics Properties page

Verifying SR-IOV from the Host Hyper-V Server

- 1. From the Device Manager, open the **Network Adapters** item, click the Microsoft Hyper-V Network adapter and right-click. Select **Properties** from the context-menu. The Hyper-V Network adapter Properties dialog box opens showing the Driver page.
- 2. Select the **Statistics** tab.
- 3. From the Statistics tab, locate the "Virtual Functions Allocated" item. "Virtual Functions Allocated" shows the count of currently enabled virtual functions.
- **Note:** The Microsoft Powershell command "Get-NetAdapterSriovVf" lists each SR-IOV virtual function. See Microsoft documentation for more information.

Configuring NVGRE for the OCe14000-series Adapters

Network virtualization using NVGRE is a network virtualization method that uses encapsulation and tunneling to create large numbers of VLANs for subnets that can extend across dispersed data centers and layer 2 (the data link layer) and layer 3 (the network layer). The purpose is to enable multi-tenant and load-balanced networks that can be shared across on-premises and cloud environments.

NVGRE was designed to solve issues caused by the limited number of VLANs that the IEEE 802.1Q specification enables, which are inadequate for complex virtualized environments, and make it difficult to stretch network segments over the long distances required for dispersed data centers.

Setup

Prerequisites

Hardware Resources:

- Two host servers
- Virtual Machines (two per Hyper-V host recommended)
- One 10GbE or 40GbE Ethernet Switch
- Two OCe14000-series adapters (1 per host server)

Software Resources:

- Windows Server 2012 with Hyper-V
- Windows Server 2012 on the Virtual Machines
- Add and Remove PowerShell Policy Scripts for each host server
- 1. On the Hyper-V hosts and peer, change the execution policy to allow PowerShell scripts to run:
 - Set-Execution Policy unrestricted –Force
 - Run HostRegedit (run this once on the Hyper-V host only). This sets the registry key to use VMQs and allows remote PowerShell scripts to be run on the host.
- 2. Set up non-blank administrator passwords on the peer to run remote PowerShell scripts.
- 3. Copy the NIC driver to C:\driver on the Hyper-V Hosts.

Configuration

Creating a VM

- 1. Use a 10Gb disk image size and 1GB RAM.
- 2. Install Windows Server 2012 RTM.
- 3. Turn off automatic administrator login by using "control userpasswords2".
- 4. Turn off the Windows Firewall.
- 5. Create a vswitch for NVGRE (for example, vport0).
- 6. Create a vswitch for non-NVGRE (normal traffic).

- 7. Expose a NIC interface into the VM for each of the vSwitches:
 - Make sure "Enable virtual machine queue" is selected under Network Adapter -> Hardware Acceleration of the VMs.
 - Record the MAC addresses located under the Network Adapter -> Advanced Features. These will be used in the add/remove policy scripts.
- 8. Rename the Network Connection name being used for NVGRE to WNVNIC (for example: Control Panel->Network and Internet->Network Connections, rename Ethernet 3 to WNVNIC).
- 9. Set up a NVGRE script.

Setting up a NVGRE Script

The following sample script is required for network virtualization:

Example of a Script Adding the NVGRE Tunnel Between Two Hosts

```
# Add the locator records for Blue subnet
Get-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord | where {$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "5001"} |
Remove-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord;
```

```
New-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord -VirtualSubnetID "5001" -CustomerAddress "10.0.0.5"
-ProviderAddress "192.x.x.x" -MACAddress "060600000005" -Rule "TranslationMethodEncap"
New-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord -VirtualSubnetID "5001" -CustomerAddress "10.0.0.7"
-ProviderAddress "192.x.x.x" -MACAddress "060600000007" -Rule "TranslationMethodEncap"
```

```
# Add the customer route records for Blue subnet
Get-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute | where {$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "5001"} |
Remove-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute;
New-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute -RoutingDomainID
"{1111111-2222-3333-4444-000000005001}" -VirtualSubnetID "5001" -DestinationPrefix
"10.0.0.0/24" -NextHop "0.0.0.0" -Metric 255
```

```
# Red Virtual Network Information
# RoutingDomainID="{11111111-2222-3333-4444-00000006001}"
# VirtualSubnetID=6001
# (Both RDID and VSID are defined by administrators, MUST be unique in the datacenter)
# [Customer Addresses]
# VM Name
         Host VSID CA PA
                                     MAC
                                                   DefaultGW
# Red1
        Hostl 6001 10.0.0.5 192.x.x.x 08-08-00-00-05 10.0.0.1
# Red2
         Host2 6001 10.0.0.7 192.x.x.x 08-08-00-00-07 10.0.0.1
# [Customer Routes]
# DestPrefix NextHopGW Note
# 10.0.0.0/24 0.0.0.0 Onlink route for Red subnet
# Add the locator records for Red subnet
Get-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord | where {$ .VirtualSubnetID -eq "6001"} |
```

Remove-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord;

```
New-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord -VirtualSubnetID "6001" -CustomerAddress "10.0.0.5"
-ProviderAddress "192.x.x.x" -MACAddress "080800000005" -Rule "TranslationMethodEncap"
New-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord -VirtualSubnetID "6001" -CustomerAddress "10.0.0.7"
-ProviderAddress "192.x.x.x" -MACAddress "080800000007" -Rule "TranslationMethodEncap"
# Add the customer route records for Red subnet
Get-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute | where {$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "6001"} |
Remove-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute:
New-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute -RoutingDomainID
"{11111111-2222-3333-4444-00000006001}" -VirtualSubnetID "6001" -DestinationPrefix
"10.0.0.0/24" -NextHop "0.0.0.0" -Metric 255
#
# [2] Configure the Host Provider Addresses and Routes required for this setup
# [Host PA Address & Route information required by the VM policy]
#
# Host Hostname
                    \{PA's\}
                                 {VM:VirtualSubnetID} ==> Set on the VMNetworkAdapter
on eash host
# ------
# Host1 example-host1 192.x.x.x {Blue1:5001, Red1:6001}
# Host2 example-host2 192.x.x.x {Blue2:5001, Red2:6001}
# [2-1] Host1
# (a) Configure Provider Address and Route:
    Get the interface, assign the PA and the default route
Get-NetVirtualizationProviderAddress | where {$ .ProviderAddress -eq "192.x.x.x"} |
Remove-NetVirtualizationProviderAddress;
$iface = Get-NetAdapter $WNVNIC
New-NetVirtualizationProviderAddress -InterfaceIndex $iface.InterfaceIndex
-ProviderAddress "192.x.x.x" -PrefixLength 24
# (b) Set VirtualSubnetID on the VM network port
Get-VMNetworkAdapter "Blue1" | where {$ .MacAddress -eq "06060000005"} |
Set-VMNetworkAdapter -VirtualSubnetID 5001;
Get-VMNetworkAdapter "Red1" | where {$ .MacAddress -eq "080800000005"} |
Set-VMNetworkAdapter -VirtualSubnetID 6001;
```

Example of a Script Removing the NVGRE Tunnel Between Two Hosts

Blue1 Host1 5001 10.0.0.5 192.x.x.x 06-06-00-00-05 10.0.0.1 Host2 5001 10.0.0.7 192.x.x.x 06-06-00-00-00-07 10.0.0.1 # Blue2 # [Customer Routes] # DestPrefix NextHopGW Note # 10.0.1.0/24 0.0.0.0 Onlink route for Blue subnet # Remove the locator records for Blue subnet Get-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord | where {\$.VirtualSubnetID -eq "5001"} | Remove-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord; # Remove the customer route records for Blue subnet Get-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute | where {\$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "5001"} | Remove-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute; # Red Virtual Network Information # RoutingDomainID="{11111111-2222-3333-4444-00000006001}" # VirtualSubnetID=6001 # (Both RDID and VSID are defined by administrators, MUST be unique in the datacenter) # [Customer Addresses] Host VSID CA PA MAC DefaultGW # VM Name Host1 6001 10.0.0.5 192.x.x.x 08-08-00-00-05 10.0.0.1 # Red1 # Red2 Host2 6001 10.0.0.7 192.x.x.x 08-08-00-00-07 10.0.0.1 # [Customer Routes] # DestPrefix NextHopGW Note # 10.0.0.0/24 0.0.0.0 Onlink route for Red subnet # Remove the locator records for Red subnet Get-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord | where {\$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "6001"} | Remove-NetVirtualizationLookupRecord; # Remove the customer route records for Red subnet Get-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute | where {\$_.VirtualSubnetID -eq "6001"} | Remove-NetVirtualizationCustomerRoute; # # [2] Configure the Host Provider Addresses and Routes required for this setup # [Host PA Address & Route information required by the VM policy] # Host Hostname {PA's} {VM:VirtualSubnetID} ==> Set on the VMNetworkAdapter on eash host # Host1 example-host1 192.x.x.x {Blue1:5001, Red1:6001}

```
# Host2 example-host2 192.x.x.x {Blue2:5001, Red2:6001}
# [2-1] Host1
#
# (a) Configure Provider Address and Route:
# Get the interface, assign the PA and the default route
Get-NetVirtualizationProviderAddress | where {$_.ProviderAddress -eq "192.x.x.x"} |
Remove-NetVirtualizationProviderAddress;
# (b) Set VirtualSubnetID on the VM network port
Get-VMNetworkAdapter "Blue1" | where {$_.MacAddress -eq "06060000005"} |
Set-VMNetworkAdapter "Red1" | where {$_.MacAddress -eq "08080000005"} |
Set-VMNetworkAdapter -VirtualSubnetID 0;
```

Policy Script Information

Verify or modify the following list of components for your specific conditions:

- Network connection name of the NIC attached to the virtual switch
- Binding network connection to the Microsoft filter driver (ms_netwnv)

Caution: Do not change the filter driver name.

- VM Names
- VM MAC Addresses
- VM SID (Virtual Machine Subnet ID)
- HOST IP Address (Provider Address = Physical NIC IP Address for NVGRE)
- VM IP Address (Customer Address = IP Address on each vNIC per VM)
- Subnet Masks

Verification and Troubleshooting

Verify that the host provider addresses can ping each other, If pings fail, perform the following steps:

- 1. Shutdown all VMs on all of the hosts.
- 2. Remove the policies.
- 3. Remove the vport0 virtual switch.
- 4. Reboot the hosts.
- 5. Create a vport0 switch.
- 6. On each VM, add a new adapter and use the vswitch name that you just created.

Note: Do not share the NIC with the host operating system.

- 7. Apply the polices.
- 8. Power-up the VMs.
- 9. Ping the provider addresses.

MS_NETWNV.sys should only be bound to WNVNIC (physical NIC). If ms_netwnv is bound to a vswitch or Hyper-V adapter, unbind it from the host server. For example:

Disable-netadapterbinding vEthernet* -ComponentID ms_netwnv

Verify that all of the IP Addresses and MAC Addresses used in the add and remove policy scripts match the VM IP's/MACs using ipconfig /all.

Create firewall rules to allow ICMP (ping) packets:

1. New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Allow ICMPv4-In"

-Protocol ICMPv4

2. New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Allow ICMPv4-Out"

-Protocol ICMPv4 -Direction Outbound

PowerShell commands shown w/"WNVNIC" used as the network connection name:

- Get-VM
- Get-vmswitch
- Get-vmnetworkadapter –VMName * | fl vmname,switch*,macaddress,ipaddress*,virtualsub*
- Get-netvirtualizationprovideraddress
- Get-netvirtualizationlookuprecord
- Get-netvirtualizationcustomerroute
- Get-netadapter wnvnic
- Get-netadapterbinding -componentID ms_netwnv
- Get-netadapterencapsulatedpackettaskoffload wnvnic
- Get-netadapteradvancedproperty wnvnic
- Disable-netadatperSriov wnvnic
- Disable-netadapterEncapsulationPacketTaskOffload wnvnic
- Get-help *-NetVirtualization*
- Get-netadapterstatistics wnvnic

Under the Host Device Manage – Network Adapters -> Emulex Statistics tab, check the following:

- VMQs Allocated
- Tunnels Allocated
- Tenants Allocated

Verification:

- 1. Ping
 - a. Launch Policy Scripts on each host.
 - b. Ping using the -t option; pings should respond.
 - c. Run the Remove Policy script on one host server.
 - d. Pings should stop responding.
 - e. Add policies; pings should respond.

2. Change the VM IP Address.

For example: change 10.0.0.5 on one host and 10.0.0.7 on the other.

Without NVGRE, you would not be able to use the same IP address as the other VM.

Ensure that you see the WNVNIC interface using the PowerShell command get-netadapter.

• If you are unable to see the NVGRE Ethernet connection, make sure that the Hyper-V's control panel/network connections property and advanced property windows are all closed. The Control Panel renames the NDI/Params registry keys and causes the policy scripts to be inoperative.

Cleaning Up Outdated Network Adapter Data

- 1. Start a win32 console window (command prompt).
- 2. From the command prompt, type

Set devmgr show nonpresent devices=1

- 3. Start devmgmt.msc.
- 4. In the device manager console, go to the view menu and select "Show hidden devices".
- 5. Open the network devices tree view.
- 6. Uninstall all Emulex entries.
- 7. Rescan for hardware changes.
- 8. Uninstall Emulex devices until they are not recognized.
- 9. Install the new driver.

Configuring RoCE for the OCe14000-Series Adapters

Notes:

- Both Windows SMB Direct and Windows NetworkDirect, which are included as part of the Windows operating system, are required for RoCE.
- RoCE is not supported when multichannel is enabled.
- RoCE configurations are not supported with SR-IOV.
- Windows Server 2012 or Windows Server 2012 R2 is required to use the RoCE features on RoCE-capable adapters.

Enabling the RoCE Profile on the Client-Side

The RoCE profile can be enabled by using one of the following:

- PXESelect BIOS. See the *Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols User Manual* for details of PXE-Select BIOS utility.
- OneCommand Manager GUI. See the *OneCommand Manager Application Version User Manual* for information about enabling the RoCE profile using OneCommand Manager GUI.

• OneCommand Manager CLI. See the OneCommand[™] Manager Command Line Interface Manual for information about enabling the RoCE profile using OneCommand Manager CLI.

Confirming That the RoCE Profile Is Enabled

Confirm that the RoCE profile is enabled by using one of the following methods:

• In the Advanced tab of the Network Property page, ensure that NetworkDirect is enabled. See Figure 3-8.

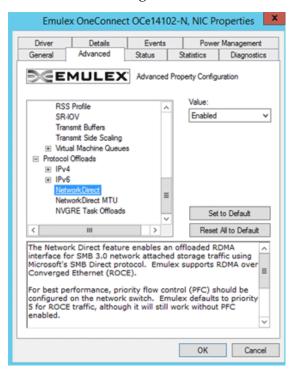


Figure 3-8 Advanced Property Configuration - RoCE-Enabled

- By using a PowerShell script:
 - o Get-NetAdapterRDMA

Windows PowerShell Copyright (C) 2013	Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.	
PS F:\Users\Admini	strator> Get-NetAdapterRDMA	
Name	InterfaceDescription	Enabled
Test Domain Ethernet 9	Emulex OneConnect OCe14102-U, NIC #3 Emulex OneConnect OCe14102-U, NIC #4 Emulex OneConnect OCe14401-UX, NIC	True True True

Figure 3-9 Get-NetAdapterRDMA - RoCE-Enabled

• Get-NetOffloadGlobal

```
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) 2013 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
PS F:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting
ReceiveSideScaling : Enabled
ReceiveSegmentCoalescing : Enabled
Chimney : Disabled
TaskOffload : Enabled
NetworkDirect : Enabled
NetworkDirectAcrossIPSubnets : Blocked
PacketCoalescingFilter : Disabled
```

Figure 3-10 Get-NetOffloadGlobal - RoCE-Enabled

If the profile is correct and NetworkDirect is enabled, you should see active NetworkDirect listeners on IP addresses (port 445) assigned to the NICs using "netstat -xan".

Using SMB Direct with NetworkDirect

Because RoCE is supported in Windows using SMB Direct with NetworkDirect, it is important that SMB Direct and NetworkDirect be configured correctly.

From the Advanced tab of the Network Interface Properties page:

- 1. Enable the "NetworkDirect" parameter.
- 2. Set the NetworkDirect MTU. Emulex recommends a NetworkDirect MTU of 4096 bytes for OCe14400-series adapters.
- **Note:** The NetworkDirect MTU affects only RoCE traffic, but the NIC traffic still uses the "Packet Size" MTU. An SMB Server will accept an incoming connection request from an SMB Client when the NetworkDirect MTU on the server is at least as large as the NetworkDirect MTU on the initiating client.
- 3. Use the "netstat -xan" command to enumerate the active NetworkDirect connections and listeners (Figure 3-11). A NetworkDirect enabled driver creates listeners on any configured IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, and the link-local IPv6 address. SMB Direct listeners listen on port 445.

G 51	Admini	strator: C:\Windows\system	132\cmd.exe	□ X
C:\Users	\Administrator>netsta	at -xan		^
Active N	etworkDirect Connect:	ions, Listeners, Share	dEndpoints	
Mode D	IfIndex Type	Local Address	Foreign Address	PI
Kernel	26 Listener Ø	[fe80::fded:e692:8	d6a:9c0e%26]:445 NA	
Kernel Kernel Kernel	26 Listener 26 Listener 25 Listener	[20:2::110:26]:445 20.2.0.110:445 [fe80::74f2:aa42:5	NA	0 0
Kernel Kernel		[20:1::110×25]:445 20.1.0.110:445	NA NA	0 0

Figure 3-11 Active Network Connections and Listeners

Mapping the RoCE-Enabled Client to the Server-Side Storage

Using an available network share with the proper permissions configured, open an SMB share from the Windows Run command or from the command prompt, by typing:

"net use [devicename:*] [\\computername\sharename]

By default this creates two RDMA connections per SMB Direct-enabled network interface on a particular server. Each SMB Direct connection maps to an RDMA queue pair. Both the client and server must negotiate support for SMB Direct. If available, each TCP connection is offloaded to an RDMA queue pair.

G14.		Adminis	trator: C:\Windows\system3	2\cmd.exe	n x
C:\Users	\Adminis	trator>netsta	t -xan		^
Active N	etworkDi	rect Connecti	ons, Listeners, SharedE	ndpoints	
Mode D	IfIndex	Туре	Local Address	Foreign Address	PI
Kernel Kernel Kernel	26	Connection Connection Listener	[20:2::110]:49281 [20:2::110]:49282 [fe80::fded:e692:8d6	[20:2::100]:445	0
Kernel Kernel Kernel	26 26 25	Listener Listener Listener	[20:2::110%26]:445 20.2.0.110:445 [fe80::74f2:aa42:573	NA NA 4:b2da%25]:445 NA	0 0
Kernel Kernel		Listener Listener	[20:1::110%25]:445 20.1.0.110:445	NA NA	0 0

Figure 3-12 SMB Share - Two RDMA Connections Per RDMA-Enabled Network Interface

The PowerShell command, "Get-NetAdapterStatistics", shows the RDMA Statistics which indicate the number of failed connection attempts.

Windows PowerShell Copyright (C) 2013 Mic	rosoft Corporation. All rights re	served.		
PS F:\Users\Administra	tor> Get-NetAdapterStatistics			
Name	ReceivedBytes Received	UnicastPackets	SentBytes SentUni	astPackets
Ethernet 14 Ethernet 15	568877 569005	5 5	35952 36034	5 5

Figure 3-13 Get-NetAdapterStatistics

SMB Multichannel

For each SMB session, SMB multichannel establishes two SMB Direct connections to a particular server by default. It also makes use of multiple RDMA-capable NIC interfaces, if available.

Opening a file share from a 2-port OCe14000-series adapter (both ports are RDMA-enabled) connected back-to-back to another 2-port OCe14000-series adapter (both ports are also RDMA-enabled) creates two SMB Direct connections per interface.

File	Home St	hare View		
(†) (†) (†)	ተ 🖳 ו	Network 🕨 b	pench29client1 + cS	~ ¢
GIN.		Admi	nistrator: C:\Windows\system32\	cmd.exe
C:\Users	Adminis	trator>nets	stat -xan	
Active N	etworkDi	rect Connec	tions, Listeners, SharedEnd	dpoints
Mode D	IfIndex	Туре	Local Address	Foreign Address
Kernel Kernel Kernel Kernel	26 25	Connection Connection Connection Connection	20.2.0.110:49370 [20:1::110]:49367	20.2.0.100:445 20.2.0.100:445 [20:1::100]:445 [20:1::100]:445
Kernel Kernel Kernel	26 25	Listener Listener Listener	20.2.0.110:445 [20:1::110:25]:445 [fe80::74f2:aa42:5734]	NA NA
Kernel C:\Users	25	Listener trator>	20.1.0.110:445	NA

Figure 3-14 Two SMB Direct Connections Per Interface

The number of connections initiated per RDMA-capable NIC interface, to a particular server, can be configured using a registry key and the following PowerShell command:

```
Set-ItemProperty -Path`
"HKLM:\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LanmanWorkstation\Paramete
rs" ` ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface -Type DWORD -Value <n>
-Force
```

SMB multichannel constraints can be used to limit an SMB connection to specific network interfaces. For example, if you have a 1Gb interface meant for a management path and one or more 10Gb interfaces meant for the RDMA traffic, you can restrict the RDMA traffic to the faster 10Gb interfaces by setting SMB multichannel constraints.

You may specify SMB multichannel constraints on the SMB client by doing the following:

- Use only certain RDMA network interface(s) to access a particular server.
- Ensure that only "ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface" connections are created per RDMA network interface to a given server

The following figure (Figure 3-15) shows that a multichannel constraint has been added to specify that only InterfaceIndex 25 should be used to connect to the server "bench29client1".

Two SMB Direct connections are established on the RDMA Network Interface with IfIndex: 25. None are established on the other OCe14000-series adapter ports; for example, the RDMA Network Interface with IfIndex: 26 (20.2.0.110).

Note: On Windows Server 2012, depending on the path used to open the previous SMB sessions to the SMB server, you may notice multiple instances of "ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface" connections being created while establishing a single SMB session to the server.

Confirm Are you sure y Performing op	you want to perform t eration 'New-SmbMulti	MultichannelConstraint -S this action? ichannelConstraint' on Tar [L] No to All [S] Suspend	get 'bench29client1'.	
	x : 25 : bench29client1	c62-b7a4-7a63f8b44543}		
Call.	Select Admi	inistrator: C:\Windows\syste	m32\cmd.exe –	• x
	ainistrator>netsta orkDirect Connecti	t -xan ons, Listeners, SharedB	ndpoints	^
Mode If) D	Index Type	Local Address	Foreign Address	PI
Kernel Kernel Kernel Kernel Kernel	25 Connection 25 Connection 26 Listener 25 Listener 25 Listener	[20:1::110]:49367 [20:1::110]:49368 20.2.0.110:445 [20:1::110/25]:445 [fe80::74f2:aa42:573	[20:1::100]:445 [20:1::100]:445 NA NA 4:b2da%25]:445 NA	0 0 0 0
Kernel	3 25 Listener	20.1.0.110:445	NA	0
🖳 i 💽 🚺 =	l	c\$		_
File Hom	e Share View			
(a) (a) v	1 🖳 🕨 Network 🕨 ber	nch29client1 > c\$	∨ Ċ Se	arch c\$

Figure 3-15 Multichannel Constraint

SMB Direct Resource Usage

Active Connections

Active connections describe the connections that a client makes to a server. Passive connections describe the connections that a server allows the client to complete.

The maximum number of active connections per port for an adapter are required when setting the "ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface" parameter. Use Table 3-5 to determine the correct number of maximum active connections based on your OCe14000-series adapter and operating system.

Note: Passive and active connection limits for both the OCe14000-series adapters are:

- Active mode See Table 3-5 below.
- Passive mode Maximum passive connections are calculated using the following equation:
 - o 511 (2 * number of ports)
- Passive + Active mode Active and passive connection counts together should not exceed 511 (2 * number of ports) as calculated above.

Table 3-5 shows the maximum number of SMB Direct active (client mode) connections that can be initiated on Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2 using the OCe14000-series adapters.

 Table 3-5 SMB Direct Active Connections (Client Mode) Per Port for OCe14000-Series Adapters

Adapter Type	Windows Server 2012	Windows Server 2012 R2
1-port 40 Gb adapter	31	15
2-port 10 Gb adapter	15	7
4-port 10Gb adapter	7	3

The Maximum Queue Pair counts on a 1-port, 2-port, and 4 port OCe14000-series adapter are as follows:

Administrator: Windows PowerShell		×
PS C:\Users\Administrator.DVTROCE> Get-NetAdapterRdma -ifdesc *Emulex* Format-List -Property MaxQueueP	airCount	<u>^</u>
MaxQueuePairCount : 509		

Figure 3-16 Resource Counts on a 1-Port 10Gb or 40Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter

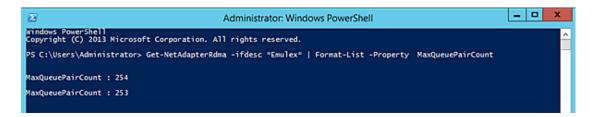


Figure 3-17 Resource Counts on a 2-Port 10Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter

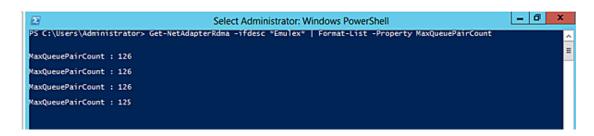


Figure 3-18 Resource Counts on a 4-Port 10Gb OCe14000-Series Adapter

SMB Direct does not take these adapter-reported limits into consideration when creating SMB Direct connections because the driver may still get a request to create more QPs or memory regions than are supported.

Note: OCe14000-series adapters will fail to create a memory region or QP if it exceeds the limits of what is supported. The per-port maximum active connections and the maximum passive connections cannot exceed the MaxQueuePairCount. See Table 3-5, SMB Direct Active Connections (Client Mode) Per Port for OCe14000-Series Adapters, on page 95 for more information.

For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2, all existing RDMA connections between the particular client-server pair, on which the failure occurred, are torn down and recreated. After a certain number of unsuccessful retries, SMB traffic falls back to TCP/IP.

The following event warning message is placed in the Windows System Log under the source "be2net" indicating the adapter is running out of resources: "The Adapter ran out of resources while creating the requested number of SMB Direct connections. Please reduce the connection count to a supported value."

Setting RoCE Parameters

You can set the RoCE adapter parameters using OneCommand Manager, PowerShell scripts, or by using the Network Interface Property page.

Note: See the *OneCommand*[™] *Manager Application User Manual* for more information on using the OneCommand Manager GUI application to configure RoCE, or see the *OneCommand*[™] *Manager Command Line Interface* for information on using OneCommand Manager CLI to configure RoCE.

The following parameters can be modified from the Network Interface Property page.

Parameter	Description
NetworkDirect	This parameter enables an offloaded RDMA interface for SMB 3.0 network-attached storage traffic using Microsoft's SMB Direct protocol.
NetworkDirect MTU	This parameter configures the maximum transmission unit (frame size) for RoCE traffic.
	Note: For optimal performance, Emulex recommends setting the MTU size to 4096.

The following parameters can be viewed via the Statistics Property Page.

Parameter	Description
RoCE QP Allocated	Indicates the number of established queue pairs for RoCE.
RoCE Transmit Throughput	The transmit data rate of RoCE traffic.
RoCE Receive Throughput	The receive data rate of RoCE traffic.

QoS Concepts Related to RoCE

Priority Groups

It is advisable to split traffic into two or more priority groups; one priority group for RoCE and other groups for non-RoCE traffic. Many of the cluster applications use TCP and RoCE traffic simultaneously. Some of them use TCP for establishing connections and share connection-specific information. As a result it is important to allocate enough bandwidth (greater than 1%) to non-RoCE (NIC traffic) to avoid a slow connection establishment rate and starvation of NIC traffic. Work conserving behavior ensures that each priority group gets enough bandwidth. Based on this behavior, non-RoCE traffic should be given sufficient bandwidth; ideally 30-70%.

L2 Flow Control

While running a port in generic pause mode because of congestion, RoCE latencies can be adversely affected. Under these conditions, it is advisable to configure RoCE to use PFC. PFC mode ensures that RoCE traffic latencies are unaffected in presence of congestion as a result of NIC traffic. However, PFC mode is not required. For switches and adapters that do not support PFC, RoCE can continue to work without PFC mode. While you can still perform bandwidth allocation for RoCE traffic as opposed to NIC traffic, this allocation cannot be guaranteed as all the outgoing traffic is paused.

Configuring QoS for RoCE

When configuring QoS for RoCE, it is important to keep in mind the following:

- A limited QoS configuration is available through OneCommand Manager.
- A single traffic class group for RoCE exists per port.
- A single RoCE priority exists in PFC mode.
- Bandwidth allocation for priority groups is supported.

Notes:

- The Windows NIC driver does not support the Microsoft DCB/QoS API.
- Powershell commands cannot be used to configure QoS-related parameters for the RoCE profile.

RoCE Adapter Side

With DCBX enabled, the switch settings will be used for PFC. Ensure that the switch settings used match the adapter default Priority 5 used for RoCE and PFC.

Note: PFC is enabled by default in OCe14000-series adapters.

Switch Side

For information on switch-side configurations, see appendix E., "RoCE Switch Support," on page 193.

OCe14000-Series Adapter Defaults

When using the OCe14000-series adapters for RoCE functionality, the following defaults apply:

- Adapter boot time
 - PFC is disabled on all the ports in the NIC+RoCE profile.
 - Generic Pause is enabled on all the ports in the NIC+RoCE profile.
- Back to back connection (OCe14000 OCe14000)
 - PFC is disabled by default.
 - Generic Pause is enabled on the connected port.
- DCBX-enabled switch connection
 - When an OCe14000-series adapter is connected to DCBX-enabled switch, it shifts the mode from Generic Pause to PFC.

- An OCe14000-series adapter configures RoCE traffic for priority 5.
 - Manually enable priority 5 on the switch under a different priority group other than FCoE/iSCSI/NIC priority group.
 - **Note:** If you do not enable priority 5 on the switch side, the OCe14000 adapter continues to be configured for PFC mode priority 5. This configuration may result in packet losses, unrecoverable errors, or infinite retries for RoCE traffic.
- DCBX-disabled switch connection
 - When an OCe14000-series adapter is connected to DCBX-disabled switch, it will be in generic pause mode.

Performance Considerations

The following recommended settings can improve SMB performance over TCP, including RDMA. However, the configuration should be tuned to provide line rate with TCP network traffic.

- 1. Disable TCP Autotuning
- 2. NIC MTU should be greater than RDMA MTU, which is recommended to be set at 4096. NIC MTU size of 9014 is recommended.
- 3. On Windows Server 2012 R2, disable the bandwidth throttling option on the SMB client side to get good throughput. This parameter has no effect on Windows Server 2012:

```
{\tt Set-SmbClientConfiguration}\ {\tt -EnableBandwidthThrottling}\ 0
```

4. On a 40Gb link with a single client server configuration, increase the QP count to a minimum of 8 for better throughput (please note that this will reduce the maximum number shares that can be connected over RDMA):

```
Set-ItemProperty -Path
"HKLM:\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LanmanWorkstation\Parameters"
ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface -Value 8 -Force
```

Configuring Multichannel

Note: RoCE is not supported when multichannel is enabled.

Multichannel, or UMC, allows you to divide a 10Gb port into multiple physical functions with flexible bandwidth capacity allocation. These functions appear to the operating system and network as separate physical devices.

Multichannel can be configured on OCe14000-series adapters through the adapter BIOS or the OneCommand Manager application.

- To configure multichannel using the adapter BIOS, see the *Boot for NIC*, *iSCSI*, *FCoE*, *and RoCE Protocols User Manual*.
- To configure multichannel using the OneCommand Manager application, see the OneCommand Manager Application User Manual or the OneCommand Manager Command Line Interface User Manual.

Refer to the Emulex *Universal Multichannel Reference Guide* for additional information on multichannel.

NPar Configuration (Dell Only)

Notes:

- NPar is available only on OCe14000-series adapters.
- When NPar is enabled, RoCE cannot be configured on any function.
- Each partition should have standard NIC properties for stateless offload.
- SR-IOV must be disabled on the adapter BIOS when NPar is used. See the following documentation for information on disabling SR-IOV on the adapter BIOS:
 - To configure SR-IOV using the adapter BIOS, see the *Boot for NIC*, *iSCSI*, *FCoE*, *and RoCE Protocols User Manual*.
 - To configure SR-IOV using the OneCommand Manager application, see the OneCommand Manager Application User Manual or the OneCommand Manager Command Line Interface User Manual.

NPar enables you to divide a 10Gb NIC port into multiple PCI functions with flexible bandwidth capacity allocation that appears to the operating system and network as separate NIC ports. For example, a single Ethernet 10Gb port appears as multiple physical devices showing in PCI configuration space as multiple functions.

Adapter Configuration

NPar can be configured on OCe14000-series adapters in several ways, including the Emulex adapter driver properties, the adapter BIOS, or using the OneCommand Manager application.

See the *Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols User Manual* for information on configuring the adapter BIOS. If you are using the OneCommand Manager application, see the *OneCommand Manager Application User Manual*.

On the host operating system side, NPar provides up to sixteen PCI functions per device using standard PCI configuration space when NParEP is enabled. Four PCI functions can be mapped to a physical port on a 4-port adapter. Eight PCI functions can be mapped to a physical port on an 2-port adapter. Each function or partition is assigned a unique MAC address.

Partitions are available for virtual function assignment and for application segmentation using VLAN or IP subnets. The partitions can be on separate subnets or VLANs.

NPar Partition Support

- Flexible Bandwidth allocation with no changes required for operating system or BIOS.
- The switch is independent, with no changes to the external switch required.
- NIC teaming is supported.

The following items are supported on a per-partition basis:

- Statistics
- LSO, LRO, RSS, TSO, and MTU
- Support for NetQueues

NPar Considerations

- NPar can use virtual adapters using VLAN tagging per partition.
- NPar can use RSS queuing support per partition.
- DCBX is supported while in NPar mode.
- If iSCSI or FCoE functions are not enabled, they are available as NIC functions.
- Only one iSCSI function is allowed per physical port.
- Only one FCoE function is allowed per physical port.
- Each function has at least one unique MAC address.
- The second to fourth functions on a particular port are available for storage protocols if desired; allowing you to configure up to two storage functions.
- When NParEP is disabled, a total of 8 functions are available evenly distributed across the ports on the adapter. For example, a 2-port adapter can have 4 functions / port and 4-port adapter can have 2 functions/port. When NParEP is enabled, a total of 16 functions are available evenly distributed across the ports on the adapter. For example, a 2-port adapter can have 8 functions/port and 4-port adapter can have 4 functions/port.
- **Note:** A system reboot is required if any of the NPar function mode settings are modified. A reboot is not required for bandwidth and MTU settings modifications.

Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page

You can enable NPar on a port using the Multichannel property page. Each port is represented by a tab on the Multichannel property page that lists all of the available PCI functions for a particular port. The list of PCI functions displayed depends on the multichannel mode.

Note: When provided by the switch, the driver accepts the QoS setting as set by DCBX for the minimum committed bandwidth instead of the minimum bandwidth configured on each partition in the Multichannel tab. If there are multiple NIC functions in an NPar configuration with storage and NIC functions together, the committed minimum bandwidth for NIC will be divided equally between all NIC functions, and the storage bandwidth will be assigned to the storage functions as applicable.

From the Multichannel property page, you can:

- Enable or disable NPar using the Mode list.
- Enable or disable NParEP.

Note: NParEP is only available when NPar mode is activated on OCe14000-series adapters. See "Using NParEP" on page 104.

- Reset the adapter to the factory default settings using the Factory Default button.
- Use the Port tab to view the available ports on the adapter.
- Configure a protocol to run on each partition on the ports.
- Configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth for each partition on the ports.

Open Device Manager by using one of the following options:

- Click Start> Control Panel>System and click the Device Manager hyperlink.
- Click **Start>Run**, then type <devmgmt.msc> and click **OK**.

The Windows Device Manager is displayed (see Figure 3-1).

Select one of the Emulex NIC adapters, right-click on it, and select **Properties**. The NIC adapter driver Properties dialog box opens. Click on the **Multichannel** tab.

Emulex One	eConnect OC	Ce14102-U	JX-D 2-por	t PCle 10Gbl	E CNA Pr 🗙
Driver General	Details Advanced	Events Status	Resour	ces Powe Diagnostics	er Management Multichannel
	Advanced	Status	Statistics	Diagnostics	
Disabled	•				Factory Default
PORT 0	PORT 1				
PF	Name				
<u>⊈</u> 0	Emulex OneCor	nect OCe141	02-UX-D 2-por	t PCIe 10GbE CN	A A
<			111		>
				ОК	Cancel

Figure 3-19 The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Disabled

Multichannel Property Page Field Definitions

• Mode — lists all possible multichannel technologies available on the selected adapter. Use it to control multichannel mode selection for the entire adapter. If

you select Disabled, only the first PCI functions on each port are powered-on and present. None of the PCI function parameters can be changed. If you select NPar, NPar is enabled and the PCI function parameters can be modified (see "Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page" on page 100).

- Factory Default restores the adapter to its factory default settings. A system reboot is required for the changes to take an effect.
- Port tab lists all of the ports available on the adapter. Each row in the list view corresponds to a single PCI function and contains all PCI function parameters. The PF column contains the PCI function number of the device. The Name column provides a friendly device name if one is available. Otherwise, the name is a generic operating system device class name.
- **Note:** If you cancel the configuration change and return the device to its factory default state, a reboot is still required.

PCI Function Presentation Using NPar

Port	Partition	Function	Personality
1	1	0	NIC
	2	2	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	4	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	6	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
2	1	1	NIC
	2	3	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	5	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	7	NIC iSCSI FCoE None

 Table 3-6 PCI Function Representation for a Two-Port Adapter

 Table 3-7 PCI Function Representation for a Four-Port Adapter

		. •	
Port	Partition	Function	Personality
1	1	0	NIC
	2	4	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
2	1	1	NIC
	2	5	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
3	1	2	NIC
	2	6	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
4	1	3	NIC
	2	7	NIC iSCSI FCoE None

Driver	Details	Events	Resou	Irces Pow	ver Management
General	Advanced	Status	Statistics	Diagnostics	Multichanne
NPar	PORT 2			_	Factory Default
Enabled	PF Protoco		w[%] BW[%]		
	0 NIC	- 25			nect OCe14102
V	2 NIC				nect OCe14102 nect OCe14102
	4 NIC	▼ 2			nect OCe 14102 nect OCe 14102
٢		ш			>

Multichannel Property Page with NPar Enabled

Figure 3-20 The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Enabled and NParEP Disabled

When NPar is enabled on the Multichannel property page, all PCI functions present on a port are listed on each Port tab. Each row corresponds to a single PCI function and contains all PCI function parameters. The following PCI function parameters are available:

- The Enabled column contains check boxes for each PCI function. Select a check box to enable a PCI function. The PCI function will appear in the Device Manager list when you reboot your system. If a check box is cleared, the PCI function is disabled and will be removed from the Device Manager list on system reboot.
- The PF column displays the PCI function number starting with 0.
- The Protocol column specifies the current role of the PCI function. You can select NIC, iSCSI, or FCoE. Depending on the protocols supported by the adapter, one of the following selections appears:
 - NIC the NIC personality implies that all the enabled functions provide NIC functionality.
 - iSCSI/FCoE the iSCSI and FCoE personalities are enabled on one function per adapter port and include NIC functionality on the other enabled functions. There can be only one storage protocol on each port.
 - None the "None" selection allows you to disable that particular function.
- The bw[%] column lists the minimum bandwidth that a PCI function can use as a percentage of the total port bandwidth.

- The BW[%] column lists the maximum bandwidth that a PCI function can use as a percentage of the total port bandwidth.
- The Name column provides a friendly device name if possible. Otherwise, it is a device name or a generic operating system device class name.
- NParEP enables NParEP. See "Using NParEP" on page 104 for more information.

Criteria for Making PCI Function Modifications

- The first PCI function on each port cannot be disabled.
- The sum of the minimum bandwidth values of every enabled PCI function must be 100%.
- A minimum bandwidth of 0% is acceptable, which means that the partition does not have a guaranteed bandwidth assigned.
- The minimum bandwidth cannot be greater than the maximum bandwidth specified on a PCI function.
- Each port can be configured to run up to two storage functions as long as they are different storage protocols.
- **Note:** A system reboot is required if any of the NPar function mode settings are modified. A reboot is not required for bandwidth and MTU setting modifications.

Using NParEP

Notes:

- NParEP support is available only on Dell 13G or newer systems when NPar is enabled.
- NParEP is available only on OCe14000-series adapters.
- On a four-port adapter, ARI functionality must be enabled in the PCIe subsystem on a particular system to support NParEP on all four ports.

PCI functions are displayed in the Windows Device Manager based on how this option is set. By enabling NParEP, you can expand the PCI functions of the adapter. See "Enabling NPar Using the Multichannel Property Page" on page 100 for more information.

General Mode NPar _	Adv:	anced	Status	S	tatistics	Diagnostics	Multichanne
NPar _	•						
· · · · ·	ORT 2	2]					Factory Default
Enabled	PF	Protocol	6	bw[%]	BW[%]	Name	
V 🖗	0	NIC		13	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 🔮	2	NIC	-	13	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 😳	4	NIC	-	13	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
v 🔮	6	NIC	-	13	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 🔮	8	NIC	Ŧ	12	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 🔮	10	NIC	-	12	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 🔮	12	NIC	-	12	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
🗹 🔮	14	NIC	-	12	100	Emulex OneConn	ect OCe14102
<		1	11				>

Figure 3-21 The Multichannel Property Page with NPar Enabled and NParEP Enabled

Multichannel Property Page with NPar and NParEP Enabled

To enable NParEP, select the NParEP checkbox. When NParEP is enabled, the PCI functions in Table 3-8 or Table 3-9 become visible.

PCI Function Presentation Using NParEP

Note: When using host tools that allow you to configure partitions, you can select an option of "None" for a PCI function. When this option is applied, the selected PCI function does not appear on the PCI scan.

Port	Partition	Function	Personality
1	1	0	NIC
	2	2	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	4	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	6	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	5	8	NIC None
	6	10	NIC None
	7	12	NIC None
	8	14	NIC None

Port	Partition	Function	Personality
2	1	1	NIC
	2	3	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	5	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	7	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	5	9	NIC None
	6	11	NIC None
	7	13	NIC None
	8	15	NIC None

 Table 3-8 PCI Function Representation for a 2-Port 16-Function Adapter—NParEP Enabled (Continued)

Port	Partition	Function	Personality
1	1	0	NIC
	2	4	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	8	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	12	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
2	1	1	NIC
	2	5	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	9	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	13	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
3	1	2	NIC
	2	6	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	10	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	14	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
4	1	3	NIC
	2	7	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	3	11	NIC iSCSI FCoE None
	4	15	NIC iSCSI FCoE None

Network Driver Performance Tuning

Optimizing Server Hardware and BIOS Configuration

Adapter performance can be improved by selecting a more efficient PCIe packet payload size. If the system BIOS allows selection of a larger PCIe packet size, selecting at least a 512-byte PCIe packet payload size provides the best efficiency for PCIe data transfers. This may be an option in the server's system BIOS. The current value is displayed in Device Manager on the Status property page for the adapter.

Most computers offer multiple distinct memory channels, which should be configured for channel interleaving for optimal performance. Optimal interleaving is achieved by using the exact same DIMM configuration for each memory channel. Check the manufacturer's documentation and BIOS parameters for details about optimizing memory bandwidth. Typically, all the DIMM slots must be populated to make use of all the memory channels. As a general rule, more DIMMs provide better performance by allowing a higher degree of memory-access interleaving to occur. However, some servers decrease the memory speed if using more than 2 DIMMs per memory channel – so it is important to understand the trade-off for a particular server platform.

Some servers may allow memory mirroring or memory sparing, where the total memory is divided in half and each location is stored twice. This allows fault recovery if one memory location detects an error, but it greatly reduces the perceived memory bandwidth of the system.

Nearly any desktop or low-end server has enough memory bandwidth for the adapter to support DMA at 20 Gb/s of data (10 Gb/s read, 10 Gb/s write). However, most of the memory demands come from the processor accessing the data for either packet copies in the non-offloaded networking stack or application. Increasing the clock speed of the memory interface to the processor can be critical for achieving the best networking performance. This interface may be the front side bus (FSB), Intel's QPI, or AMD's HyperTransport.

Windows Server Network Driver

Table 3-10 describes ways to use various NIC driver properties and Microsoft Windows properties to performance tune a system.

Situation	Answer/Solution
There are a large number of short-lived TCP connections such as web server or e-mail server.	Enable RSS, increase number of RSS queues, and disable TCP offload.
There are large data transfers such as to a file server, web server with file downloads, or an FTP server.	Use TCP connection offload.
There are large data transfers such as to a backup server.	Enable jumbo packets, and use TCP offload.

Table 2.10	Windows	Sorvor	Performance	Tuning	Situations
	VVIII00VVS	Server	Periorinarice	runnig	SILUALIONS

Situation	Answer/Solution
There is a small server struggling to keep up with larger servers on the network.	Disable RSS, enable TCP offload, enable jumbo packets, and increase the interrupt moderation to allow fewer interrupts per second.
There is a general purpose server such as Active Directory server, DHCP server, or a DNS server.	Use TCP offload, and enable RSS.

Table 3-10 Windows Server Performance Tuning Situations (Continued)

Analyzing Performance Issues

You can use the Windows Performance Monitor (perfmon) to view statistics for each network device.

To view statistics for each network device:

- 1. Click **Start > Run > perfmon** to launch the Windows Performance Monitor.
- 2. Right-click and select Add Counters to add additional statistics.

Table 3-11 lists a few statistics to use for troubleshooting performance issues. For network performance, all the counters from the table are useful: Network Interface, TCPv4, IPv4, and Processor.

Table 3-11 Statistics and Fine Tuning

Situation	Answer/Solution
Network Interface > Packets Received Errors.	If this is incrementing even a small amount, a physical issue may exist on the network, such as a loose connection or bad cable, causing CRC errors in Ethernet packets. Find and eliminate the physical issue.
Network Interface > Packets Received Discarded.	If this is incrementing dramatically, the computer system may be receiving a lot of unsolicited traffic using network resources.
IPv4 > Fragmented Datagrams / sec.	If this is greater than 0, the computer system is sending or receiving IP fragments. This is a serious performance issue. See "Jumbo Packet" on page 108.
TCPv4 > Segments Retransmitted / sec.	TCP retransmits indicate that packets are being dropped by the receiving system (or in a network switch). Ideally, reduce retransmits to 0.
Processor >% Processor Time.	If CPU usage is high, try to enable all available offloads, such as TCP offload, checksum offloads and use jumbo packets.

Jumbo Packet

The jumbo packet setting in the registry determines the maximum Ethernet packet size. It includes the Ethernet frame header (typically 14 bytes) but excludes the trailing CRC. The standard packet size is 1514 bytes plus a 4 byte trailing CRC.

Vendors use many terms that refer to this same quantity, such as packet size, frame size, or MTU. The MTU is the Ethernet packet payload size. This does not include the

Ethernet frame header or the trailing CRC. The standard MTU is 1500 bytes, corresponding to a 1514-byte packet size plus a 4-byte trailing CRC. Historically, any 1514-byte frame is a standard packet, while any frame larger than 1514 bytes is called a jumbo packet. Windows Server attempts to standardize the terminology across vendors so the jumbo packet parameter refers to the byte size of the packet.

The Windows Server driver supports several jumbo packet values. The larger packet size provides better throughput and CPU usage. Typically, all devices on the network, including switches, must be configured for the larger size. The drawbacks of using jumbo packets are interoperability and increased memory usage on the server.

To set a jumbo packet value, go to the Advanced Properties page in Windows Device Manager. For information on how to configure the options through the Advanced Property page, see "Modifying Advanced Properties" on page 62

The path MTU is the maximum MTU that can be used before IP fragmentation occurs, taking into account the MTU for the endpoints and all routers between the endpoints. To verify the path MTU, ping a remote target with an increasing payload size. Eventually, the IP packet length exceeds the path MTU, and the packet fragments. This can be seen by using a packet sniffing application, such as Ethereal, Wireshark, or Microsoft Network Monitor.

IP fragmentation degrades performance dramatically, because all fragments must be received and reassembled before delivering the network packet to the upper layer protocol. In many cases, IP fragmentation may lead to a 10x performance degradation. The MTU parameter should be modified on all systems to avoid IP fragmentation for optimal network throughput.

Typical cases for using the MTU:

- Server interconnects are typically deployed using jumbo frames. This is the most efficient configuration for high bandwidth server-to-server communication, such as Network Attached Storage, iSCSI and database transactions.
- Servers connected to client systems that run desktop operating systems typically use standard 1500-byte frames. Most desktop systems do not support jumbo packets.
- Servers that need both high performance server-to-server communication and client access can be configured with jumbo frames with Path MTU Discovery enabled. Path MTU Discovery is enabled by default in the Windows Server, and it allows TCP connections to negotiate the optimal packet size that avoids IP fragmentation.

Flow Control

The adapter supports IEEE 802.3x standard flow control, which uses control packets to temporarily pause the transmission of packets between two endpoints. These control messages are point-to-point, they are not forwarded by switches or routers. You must configure both endpoints for flow control. The adapter can either respond to flow control packets (by temporarily pausing transmits) or send flow control PAUSE packets when the transmitter is overwhelming the system's receive bandwidth. For best performance, flow control must be enabled on the switches as well as on UCNAs.

Receive and transmit flow control are on by default. Flow control is not available if using FCoE on a converged network adapter. In this situation, priority pause is negotiated with the network switch and used only for the FCoE protocol packets.

The NIC function can also use priority pause if supported by the switch. This requires tagging packets in the operating system with the correct priority value, and enabling ETS in the driver properties.

Configurations that support multiple PCI functions per port generally configure flow control from the switch or blade configuration application. Since flow control is an Ethernet port property, it must be the same for all PCI functions using the same port.

If multiple PCI functions are exposed for a single 10-Gb/s Ethernet port, such as in a blade configuration, the flow control parameter must be set the same on all adapters for the port. The results are unpredictable if the setting differs among PCI functions, because this is a shared property of the 10-Gb/s port.

Examples:

Flow control greatly improves the following situations:

• The adapter is installed in 4x PCIe slot or an underpowered server system.

If the PCIe bus does not provide 10 Gb/s of throughput due to chipset limitations or the bus width, the adapter cannot maintain 10 Gb/s of incoming receive data. It starts dropping packets quickly. In this situation it may be beneficial to enable receive flow control in the adapter, and enable flow control in the attached switch for all devices. This helps to slow down the transmitters.

• The adapter transmits to 1-Gb devices, especially non-TCP protocol.

If the adapter transmits to a 10-Gb/s switch with attached 1-Gb clients, the adapter may overwhelm the switch. The switch is then forced to start dropping packets because, although it may receive a 10-Gb/s stream, the client can only sink a 1-Gb stream. In this situation, it may be beneficial to enable transmit flow control in the adapter, and enable flow control for the 10-Gb/s switch port.

Note: If multiple PCI functions are exposed for a single 10-Gb/s Ethernet port, such as in a blade configuration, the flow control parameter must be set the same on all adapters for the port. The results are unpredictable if the setting differs among PCI functions, because this is a shared property of the 10-Gb/s port.

For information on modifying the Flow Control parameter, see "Configuring NIC Driver Options" on page 44.

NUMA Considerations for Windows Server 2012 R2

NUMA assignments may affect network performance and CPU efficiency. If your application is not NUMA aware and network traffic is moderate to heavy, the CPU and memory access are managed by the operating system. As a result, the operating system may cross NUMA nodes or your application may be on the same NUMA node as other applications, decreasing your network efficiency. Regardless of whether your application is multi-threaded, and if data is not in parallel, consider the NUMA CPU defaults.

To improve network and CPU performance for heavy network loads under these conditions, you may have to make an appropriate NUMA CPU selection. For example, in Windows Server 2012 R2, you can use the Task Manager to adjust the "Set Affinity" property to bind the application to a specific NUMA node for maximum network performance and CPU efficiency.

Checksum Offloading and Large Send Offloading (LSO)

The adapter supports IP, TCP, and UDP checksum offloading. All these protocols are enabled by default. You can disable offloading through the Windows Device Manager Advanced Properties. Disabling checksum offloading is only useful for packet sniffing applications, such as Ethereal or Microsoft Network Monitor, on the local system where the adapter is installed and monitored. When packets are sniffed, transmit packets may appear to have incorrect checksums because the hardware has not yet calculated them.

The adapter supports transmit LSO, which allows the TCP stack to send one large block of data, and the hardware segments it into multiple TCP packets. This is recommended for performance, but it can be disabled for packet sniffing applications. LSO sends appear as giant packets in the packet sniffer, because the hardware has not yet segmented them.

Note: On Windows Server 2012, Recv Segment Coalescing is enabled by default. You must disable Recv Segment Coalescing if you want to set the Checksum Offload setting to anything other than enabled.

For information on modifying the CheckSum Offload or Large Send Offload parameter, see "Configuring NIC Driver Options" on page 44.

Receive Side Scaling (RSS) for Non-Offloaded IP/TCP Network Traffic

The adapter can process TCP receive packets on multiple processors in parallel. This is ideal for applications that are CPU limited. Typically, these applications have numerous client TCP connections that may be short-lived. Web servers and database servers are prime examples. RSS typically increases the number of transactions per second for these applications.

Understanding RSS

To better understand RSS, it helps to understand the interrupt mechanism used in the network driver. Without RSS, a network driver receives an interrupt when a network packet arrives. This interrupt may occur on any CPU, or it may be limited to a set of CPUs for a given device, depending on the server architecture. The network driver launches one DPC that runs on the same CPU as the interrupt. Only one DPC ever runs at a time. In contrast, with RSS enabled, the network driver launches multiple parallel DPCs on different CPUs.

For example, on a four-processor server that interrupts all processors, without RSS the DPC jumps from CPU to CPU, but it only runs on one CPU at a time. Each processor is busy only 25 percent of the time. The total reported CPU usage of the system is about 25 percent (perhaps more if other applications are also using the CPU). This is a sign that

RSS may help performance. If the same four-processor server uses RSS, there are four parallel executing DPCs, one on each processor. The total CPU usage that is available for networking processing is increased from 25 percent to 100 percent.

Some server machines and some network traffic profiles do not benefit from RSS. Because the non-offloaded TCP stack includes a data copy during receive processing, it is possible that memory bandwidth will limit performance before the CPU. In this situation, the CPU usage is very high while all processors wait for memory accesses. To overcome this issue, you can reduce the number of RSS CPUs, or disable RSS entirely.

Poor RSS behavior is typical only in network performance testing applications that receive data, but perform no other processing. For other applications, RSS allows the application to scale other processing tasks across all CPUs, thereby improving overall performance. RSS offers the most benefit for applications that create numerous, short-lived connections. These applications are typically CPU limited instead of network bandwidth limited.

For information on modifying the RSS Queues parameter, see "Configuring NIC Driver Options" on page 44.

Note: Microsoft currently does not schedule RSS processing on all hyper-threaded CPUs. For example, only CPU 1 and 3 have RSS queues on a dual-core, hyperthreaded CPU.

Enabling Windows to Use Up to Eight Processors

Windows Server 2008 uses only four processors by default. It is possible for adapters to use up to eight processors. In order for the driver to use up to eight processors, the registry must be changed and the system restarted.

For Windows Server 2008, set the registry keyword MaxNumRssCpus (a DWORD type) to 8 at the location:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Ndis\
Parameters
```

Note: Do not set the registry keyword to a value greater than the number of processors in the system or 16, whichever is smaller.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows Server 2012, the operating system uses all available CPU cores for RSS without manual configuration.

TCP Offloading (TOE)

Note: TCP Offloading (TOE) is not supported by OCe14000-series adapters.

The adapter and drivers support TCP offload, which provides significant performance improvements. The performance improvements are:

- A zero-copy receive data path exists. In contrast, all non-offloaded TCP packets are copied in the network stack. This copy dramatically increases the memory bandwidth and CPU requirements for receive data.
- Sending and receiving of ACK packets is handled entirely in hardware, reducing PCIe bus usage and interrupts.

- TCP timers, including delayed ACK, push, retransmit and keep alive, are implemented in hardware. This reduces host CPU usage.
- Retransmits are handled entirely in hardware.
- Packetizing data, including segmenting, checksums, and CRC, is supported. The network driver should use send and receive buffers that are larger than 1 MB for maximum efficiency.
- The driver provides efficient parallel processing of multiple connections TCP on multiple CPU systems.

The adapter receive path is zero-copy for applications that prepost receive buffers or that issue a socket read before the data arrives. Ideal applications use Microsoft's Winsock2 Asynchronous Sockets API, which allows posting multiple receive buffers with asynchronous completions, and posting multiple send operations with asynchronous completions. Applications that do not prepost receive buffers may incur the penalty of the data copy, and the performance improvement is significantly less noticeable.

Applications that transmit large amounts of data show excellent CPU efficiency using TCP offload. TCP offload allows the network driver to accept large buffers of data to transmit. Each buffer is roughly the same amount of processing work as a single TCP packet for non-offloaded traffic. The entire process of packetizing the data, processing the incoming data acknowledgements, and potentially retransmitting any lost data is handled by the hardware.

TCP Offload Exclusions

Microsoft provides a method to exclude certain applications from being offloaded to the adapter. There are certain types of applications that do not benefit effectively from TCP offload. These include TCP connections that are short-lived, transfer small amounts of data at a time, exhibit fragmentation from end to end, or make use of IP options.

If an application sends less data than the MSS, the driver, like most TCP stacks, uses a Nagling algorithm. Nagling reduces the number of TCP packets on the network by combining small application sends into one larger TCP packet. Nagling typically reduces the performance of a single connection to allow greater overall performance for a large group of connections.

During Nagling, a single connection may have long pauses (200 ms) between sending subsequent packets, as the driver waits for more data from the application to append to the packet. An application can disable Nagling using the TCP_NO_DELAY parameter. TCP offload does not improve the performance for connections that Nagle, because the performance is intentionally limited by the Nagling algorithm. Telnet and SSH consoles are examples of connections that typically use Nagling.

Windows Server has not optimized the connection offload path. Some applications that use numerous short-lived TCP connections do not show a performance improvement using TCP offload.

Windows Server provides control over the applications and TCP ports that are eligible for TCP offload using the netsh tool. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for these netsh commands: netsh interface tcp add chimneyapplication state=disabled application=<path> netsh interface tcp add chimneyport state=disabled remoteport=23 localport=*

Note: The netsh commands require the Windows firewall to be running. If the firewall is disabled, all applications and ports added with the netsh commands may fail to connect.

TCP Offload Optimization Settings

The adapter supports an option for optimizing TCP connection offload characteristics for throughput or latency. This option is available through the Advanced Property Page. See "Configuring NIC Driver Options" on page 44 for the TCP Offload Optimization settings.

The default option is Optimize Throughput, which produces the best throughput characteristics for certain types of traffic flows. This configuration setting has produced the best results on benchmarks such as Chariot, ntttcp, and iperf.

The other available option, Optimize Latency, improves the latency characteristics for the class of traffic flows not ideally suited for offloading by sacrificing throughput. These are applications that typically do not pre-post receive buffers at a rate fast enough to keep up with the traffic flow, causing the received data to be buffered until the application has pre-posted a receive buffer. Some applications intentionally are written this way to "peek" at incoming data to determine how large of a receive buffer to post. The timings of such a usage semantic in some cases (depending on factors such as CPU-Memory performance, line rates, the sizes of the receive buffers, and system loading at the time) will result in no observable performance improvement.

It is recommend that you leave this parameter set to the default of Optimize Throughput.

Windows Networking and TOE

If certain Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2 networking features are enabled, TOE does not operate as expected, and connections are not offloaded.

Installing or activating firewall applications causes no connections to be offloaded by the Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2 network stack. By default, Windows Firewall Services are enabled at operating system installation time, and they must be explicitly disabled in order to use TOE. Firewall services can be disabled through the Service Control panel, or the following commands at the command line prompt:

To set firewall services to load on demand:	sc config MpsSvc start= demand
To stop firewall services:	Net stop MpsSvc
To temporarily disable firewall services:	netsh advfirewall set all state off

Enabling certain Windows networking features, such as network bridging, VPN, and routing, may cause the operating system to enable IP NAT services and the IPSEC policy agent. These services, if enabled, disallow connections from being offloaded to the adapter. To disable these functions, use the Services Control panel, or the following commands at the command line prompt:

```
net stop accesspolicy
net stop sharedaccess
net stop ipnat
```

Windows TCP Parameters

Emulex does not recommend modifying the TCP registry parameters, such as TcpAckFrequency, provided by Microsoft. The default parameters are suitable for a wide variety of situations, with or without using TCP offloading.

Receive Window Auto Tuning and Compound TCP

Windows Server adds several features to the host TCP stack, such as receive window auto-tuning and CTCP. These features affect only non-offloaded TCP traffic.

Performance of some 10 Gb/s stress applications may suffer with these features enabled. In particular, Emulex has seen some bi-directional data stream test performance degradation when receive window auto-tuning is enabled. This is due to increased receive performance that adversely affects the same TCP connection's transmit performance.

To disable these features, type these commands at the command line prompt:

netsh interface tcp set global autotuning=disabled netsh interface tcp set global congestionprovider=none

Interrupt Coalescing

The Windows Server network driver automatically performs adaptive interrupt coalescing. During periods of low network usage, the interrupt delay is set to a minimum for lower latency. As the interrupt rate increases, the delay is increased. This allows the driver to perform more work in a single interrupt, which reduces the amount of wasted cycles from additional interrupts.

The interrupt coalescing algorithm automatically tunes the system to maintain responsiveness and performance in a wide variety of situations, including RSS and TOE traffic.

On slower machines, excessive interrupts cause user input to become non-responsive, and they may not allow sufficient CPU cycles for higher level drivers (such as Microsoft iSCSI Initiator) and applications. This may result in timeouts in upper layer applications, because they are never scheduled to run. Increasing the level of interrupt coalescing can alleviate these issues. Increasing interrupt coalescing may improve total bandwidth for applications that transfer large data buffers. Additionally, servers running numerous parallel TCP connections may benefit from higher interrupt coalescing.

Some applications run slower with interrupt coalescing enabled, such as applications that depend on the completion of the current network transfer before they post additional work. If an application sends and receives one network message before posting the next message, it is considered latency bound. For latency bound applications, an interrupt is required to proceed to the next work item, so reducing the number of interrupts directly reduces the network throughput. The Microsoft iSCSI Initiator is generally considered a latency bound application unless the I/O sizes are very large.

When tuning the system, you must balance the extra CPU usage caused by interrupts with the potential decrease in total throughput for latency bound applications.

CPU Binding Considerations

Windows applications may set a processor affinity, which binds a program to a particular CPU in a multiple processor computer. However, with the recent additions to the Windows networking stack, manually configuring CPU affinity is not recommended.

The advantage of application affinity for network applications is based on choosing the ideal relationship between the DPC and application affinity to reduce processor-cache coherency cycles. The ideal mapping may require that both the DPC and application run on the same processor, different processors, or different cores of a dual-core processor that share a common memory cache. Even when the best affinity relationship is determined, it is impossible to enforce this relationship because RSS or TCP offloading choose the DPC processor.

The driver uses multiple parallel DPCs that are explicitly assigned to particular CPUs for processing both RSS and TCP offloading tasks. Each TCP connection is assigned to a particular CPU for processing. This provides the advantage of assigning CPU affinities by reducing CPU cache misses, without any user configuration.

Explicit processor affinity assignments are not necessary for the driver because the advantages of assigning processor affinities are realized by using RSS. The only reason to experiment with application and interrupt CPU affinity is when performing isolated networking benchmarks.

Single TCP Connection Performance Settings

One common benchmark is to run a single TCP connection between two computers as fast as possible. The following are a few suggestions to deliver the best possible performance:

- Use TCP window scaling with a 256 Kb or 512 Kb window. This may be controlled with show socket applications, such as ntttcp from Microsoft.
- Use send and receive buffers that are larger than 128 Kb with an efficient application such as ntttcp.
- Disable RSS and use an interrupt filter driver. Experiment with all relative CPU affinities to find the best combination.
- Disable timestamps and SACK, because the test should run without dropping any packets.

- Unbind unused network protocols in the Network Connections property page.
- Disable any firewall services, IPSEC, or NAT.

iSCSI Driver Configuration

Table 3-12 lists the user-configurable iSCSI driver options available on Windows Server. It includes a description of the parameters, their default values, and their configuration limits.

Note: If the value given for a parameter is outside the supported range, the driver logs an error in the Event Log and continues to load by using the parameter's default value.

Configuring iSCSI Driver Options

The OneConnect Windows iSCSI driver parameters can be configured using the Advanced tab of the Device Manager Property Page. To modify a configuration parameter:

- 1. Select the Emulex OneConnect iSCSI CNA in the Windows Device Manager under Storage Controllers.
- 2. Right click and select **Properties**. The Device Manager Property page opens.
- 3. Select the Advanced tab and make appropriate changes to the parameter as required.
- 4. Reboot the system for the changes to take effect.

Notes:

- The modifications to the driver parameters made using the Device Manager Property page are not immediately applied. Instead they take effect during the next driver load sequence; either during the next reboot or a driver unload or load operation.
- Although the Advanced Tab of the Device Manager Property page can be accessed from any OneConnect iSCSI adapter, the parameter changes are uniformly applied to all the OneConnect iSCSI adapter PCIe functions on the system. Individual iSCSI PCIe functions cannot have their own set of parameters.

Table 3-12 gives a description of the different iSCSI driver options and their possible values.

Parameter	Default Value	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Description
ΕΤΟ	90 seconds	0 seconds	3600 seconds	ETO in seconds. This parameter determines the amount of time the driver waits for the target to be available after it has lost connection.

Table 3-12	iSCSI Driver	Options
------------	--------------	---------

Parameter	Default Value	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Description
im_policy	2	0	4	The Interrupt Moderation policy parameter controls the rate of interrupts for the UCNA. For more information, see "Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings" on page 119.
large_io	64	64	512	Maximum transfer size in a single I/O request, in KB. By default, the iSCSI driver supports a maximum of 64 KB of data and 16 scatter/gather entries in a single I/O request. This option enables support for 512 KB of data in a single I/O request. If an application issues an I/O request that is larger than 64 KB or that needs more than 16 scatter/gather entries, the request is split into multiple requests by the Storport driver. Note: If the large_io parameter is set to 512, the amount of physical memory consumed by the driver increases. Also,
				although intermediate values between 64 and 512 are accepted, the memory used by the driver is the same as is used if large_io is set to 512.
LDTO	20 seconds	0 seconds	3600 seconds	LDTO, in seconds. This parameter determines the amount of time the driver waits for the controller's physical link to be available before reporting that the LUNs are unavailable to the operating system.
lqd	128	1	255	The LUN queue depth parameter configures the number of concurrent commands to a logical unit via Storport API StorPortSetDeviceQueueDepth. The Iqd parameter also sets the maximum number of concurrent commands allowed per LUN.

Table 3-12 iSCSI Driver Options (Continued)

Interrupt Moderation Policy Settings

The Interrupt Moderation policy settings control the rate of interrupts for UCNA hardware. By default, the driver implements an interrupt moderation scheme that is based on the I/O load and the interrupt rate. The default setting for im_policy tries to vary the interrupt rate between 3500 to 10000 interrupts per second. In addition, the iSCSI driver allows other configuration settings, as shown in Table 3-13.

Parameter Value	Setting	Description
im_policy=0	Disabled	The Interrupt rate algorithm is turned off in the driver.
im_policy=1	Aggressive	The highest interrupt rate.
im_policy=2	Moderate	The default value.
im_policy=3	Conservative	A lower interrupt rate than moderate.
im_policy=4	Very conservative	The lowest interrupt rate.

 Table 3-13 im_policy Settings

While the default setting may work for most configurations, there are instances when the setting may need to be altered. The im_policy parameter setting should be based on the UCNA system configuration, the number of iSCSI targets to be connected, the I/O load, and the throughput and latency offered by these iSCSI targets.

On systems that are capable of sustaining a higher interrupt rate and on which the number of connected targets is low (eight or fewer), setting the im_policy to 1 results in lower latency and higher values of I/O operations per second (IOPs). But this aggressive interrupt rate can also result in system stalls and freezes, especially if queue depth values are high and I/O requests are small.

In a configuration that involves a large number of iSCSI targets (more than 32 or 64) and higher values of queue depth, the default setting may prove to be too aggressive. In such a case, you may need to change the im_policy parameter setting to 3 or 4. Although this increases latency of an I/O request, the lower interrupt rate may allow the system to be functional under a high load.

Creating Non-Bootable Targets

To set up non-bootable targets, proceed with the driver and operating system installation, then download and use the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service to configure and manage the adapter.

Using the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service

You can use the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service to configure and manage the UCNA. The Microsoft Initiator Service is available as a free download from www.microsoft.com. See the documentation that accompanies it for detailed information.

Note: When you install the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service, you need to select only the Initiator Service check box and not the Software Initiator check box.

The Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service sets its own initiator name. Once you have installed it, you must replace this with your chosen initiator name. To do this:

- 1. In the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service, under the general tab, click **Change**.
- 2. Type your initiator name and click **OK**.

Logging into a Target Using the Microsoft Software Initiator

If you install the Software Initiator, you must select the UCNA initiator when logging into the target. To do this:

- 1. From the Targets tab, select the target and click **LogOn**.
- 2. Click Advanced. Under the General Tab, everything appears as default.
- 3. Select the UCNA initiator as the local adapter, select your source IP, and click **OK**

Windows Multipath I/O Support

This section describes the installation and login processes for multipath I/O support on Windows Server operating systems.

Multipath Support

MPIO must be installed from the Server Manager. After installing the MPIO feature, you must launch and configure the MPIO GUI to enable multipath support for iSCSI devices.

The following steps describe the installation process for setting up Microsoft iSCSI DSM and enabling multipath I/O for all iSCSI devices irrespective of their vendor and device IDs. You can use the MPIO GUI to configure DSMs other than Microsoft iSCSI DSM. Also, you can use the GUI to enable multipath support for a specific vendor ID and device ID. For details on these topics, refer to the Microsoft TechNet Library on the Microsoft website.

In a multipath configuration the driver parameters, LDTO and ETO, can be configured to control the amount of time it takes for the failover operation to complete. The default value of LDTO is 20 seconds and the default value of ETO is 90 seconds.

For information on modifying the timeout parameters in a failover configuration, refer to "Error Handling Under MultiPath (MPIO) and Cluster Configurations" on page 123.

If the ETO or LDTO value needs to be modified,

- 1. Select the Emulex OneConnect iSCSI CNA in the Windows Device Manager under Storage Controllers.
- 2. Right click and select **Properties**. The Device Manager Property page opens.
- 3. Select the Advanced tab and set the desired value of ETO and LDTO, for example ETO=120 and LDTO=60.
- 4. Reboot the system for the changes to take effect.
- 5. Log into the iSCSI target using WMI. For more information, see "Logging into Targets for Multipath Support" on page 121.

- 6. Enable MPIO.
 - a. Select Start>Administrative Tools>Server Manager.
 - b. In the Server Manager tree, click Features.
 - c. In the Features area, click **Add Features**.
 - d. In the Add Features wizard on the Select Features page, select the **Multipath I/O** check box and click **Next.**
 - e. On the Confirm Installation Selections page, click Install.
 - f. When the installation is completed, click **Close** on the Installation Results page.
 - g. When prompted to restart the computer, click Yes.
 - h. Click Close.
- 7. Discover all possible paths to all devices on the system.
 - a. Open the MPIO control pane: select **Start>Administrative Tools>MPIO**.
 - b. On the User Account Control page, click **Continue**. The Properties dialog box is displayed.
 - c. Select the **Discover Multi-Paths** tab.
 - d. Select Add support for iSCSI Devices and click Add.
- 8. Reboot the system when prompted to do so.

After rebooting, the Microsoft iSCSI DSM claims all iSCSI discovered disks. The MPIO GUI shows device id MSFT2005iSCSIBusType_0x9 under the MPIO Devices tab. The Disk Manager does not show duplicate disks.

You can configure load balancing policies on the LUN from the Device Manager after you click the disk and select the MPIO tab.

Logging into Targets for Multipath Support

After you have successfully installed and enabled MPIO support on a Windows Server, you must log in to the target. This section describes the steps to log into iSCSI targets through the WMI GUI. For information on using the iSCSISelect utility to log into an iSCSI target, see the *Emulex Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols User Manual.*

To log in to a target using WMI:

- 1. Select the **Enable multi-path in the Log On to Target** window. This must be selected for every target to be logged in for MPIO. Use the Advanced tab to select the specific adapter port to use for login.
- 2. After the target login is complete, select the target and click the **Details** or **Properties** button (depending on the Windows operating system) to see the multiple sessions connected.

Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for iSCSI Connections

Because the Emulex OneConnect UCNA is a multi-function adapter, the MTU settings for iSCSI functions are different than the ones for NIC functions.

For iSCSI, there is no explicit way to configure MTU from the OneCommand Manager application. Instead, this value is auto-negotiated by the firmware. Before establishing a TCP connection for an iSCSI Login, the iSCSI firmware issues an ICMP Echo with a large payload to the iSCSI target. If Jumbo Frames has been enabled on all the switches leading to the target, as well as, on the target interface and if there is a successful ICMP Echo reply, the iSCSI firmware uses Jumbo Frames for that connection. The MTU used in this case is 8342 bytes.

If the large ping request is unsuccessful, the firmware defaults to non-jumbo mode and uses an MTU size of 1514 bytes.

The Max MTU value is displayed in the OneCommand Manager application for the iSCSI controller under the Port Information Tab on the Max MTU field. The TCP MSS used for an active iSCSI connection is displayed in the OneCommand Manager application in the 'TargetSessions' screen on the TCPMSS field.

iSCSI Error Handling

The goal of iSCSI error handling is to be tolerant of link level and target level failures up to configured timeout values, so that I/O errors are not seen by the application or operating system. The error handling is triggered under the following conditions:

- Loss of immediate link to the UCNA (such as a cable disconnect or port failure). The UCNA firmware detects the loss of link and notifies the driver. When this happens, the driver queues the I/O requests internally, up to a configured timeout period, so that the operating system does not see I/O errors. This timeout period is known as LDTO.
- Loss of connection to the target because of target or network disconnection at the target. If the driver has I/O requests pending with the target and the target becomes unavailable (because the target is down, has failed over, or network issues are detected at the target), the driver queues the I/O request internally up to a configured timeout period. This timeout period is known as ETO.

If the configured threshold for LDTO and ETO is reached and the UCNA is still unable to connect to the target, the driver fails all I/O requests. I/O errors are seen by the application and operating system.

Note: Following a link up, switch ports can take a long time to initialize and go to a forwarding state. Because of this, add additional time to the ETO and LDTO settings to eliminate I/O disruption or target unavailability. If the switch port is connected to a single host, then PortFast mode can be enabled on the switch port to eliminate delays in transitioning to a forwarding state.

ETO

Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server

LDTO and ETO values are configured using the Advanced tab of the Device Manager Property page. Table 3-14 lists the default values of LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server and the limits within which they can be configured.

Note: If the ETO is set to a number between 0 and 19, the driver assumes the value to 20 seconds internally. You will not see any modification to the registry.

Table 5-14 EDTO and ETO information on the windows server			
Value	Default	Minimum	Maximum
LDTO	20 sec	0 sec	3600 sec

Table 3-14 LDTO and ETO Information on the Windows Server

90 sec

To modify LDTO and ETO values, edit the driver parameters for the iscsi service:

0 sec

3600 sec

- 1. Select the Emulex OneConnect iSCSI CNA in the Windows Device Manager under Storage Controllers.
- 2. Right click and select **Properties**. The Device Manager Property page opens.
- 3. Select the Advanced tab and make the following changes:
 - LDTO = 25
 - ETO = 50
- 4. Reboot the system for the changes to take effect.

This sets the default value of LDTO to 25 seconds and the default value of ETO to 50 seconds. The settings are applied the next time the driver is loaded. You must reboot the system (boot drivers) or disable the iSCSI driver and enable it again (non-boot drivers) in Device Manager for the settings to take effect.

Error Handling Under MultiPath (MPIO) and Cluster Configurations

In an MPIO or cluster configuration, fault tolerant software is present on the system in addition to the iSCSI driver's default error handling scheme. Depending on the type of failover configuration, the iSCSI driver's error handling parameter can be configured to modify the timing characteristics of a failover operation.

If the iSCSI target is in Active-Active failover mode, the iSCSI driver can be configured to report I/O errors as soon as they are detected by setting the iSCSI driver's LDTO and ETO parameters to 0. This allows the failover software to trigger a path failover to an active path or active node as quickly as possible.

If the iSCSI target is in Active-Standby failover mode, then the iSCSI driver must wait for the target side failover operation to complete before reporting device unavailability to the operating system. For such configurations, the driver's ETO must be set to the amount of time the iSCSI target needs to complete its failover operation.

4. Troubleshooting

There are several circumstances in which your system may operate in an unexpected manner. The Troubleshooting section contains reference tables on event codes and error messages and provides information regarding unusual situations.

General Troubleshooting

Table 4-1	General	Troubleshooting
	Ocherai	noubleanoothig

Issue	Answer/Solution
The operating system fails to install or does not successfully install the driver.	Verify that the operating system is supported by the driver.
Windows Device Manager shows a code 10 or code 39 with a yellow or red exclamation point on the device.	The firmware image does not match the installed device drivers, or the firmware is corrupt. Using the OneCommand Manager application or one of the Windows PE offline or online utilities, install a version of firmware that is compatible with the driver.
The firmware is corrupt or non-responsive.	Using the OneCommand Manager application or one of the Windows PE offline or online utilities, install a version of firmware that is compatible with the driver
The Emulex iSCSI BIOS banner is not displayed during system POST.	Configure the motherboard BIOS to enable the Option ROM for the PCIe slot in which the UCNA is installed.

Troubleshooting the FC/FCoE Driver

Troubleshooting the Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration

Note: The LACP cannot be used on an FCoE port.

Table 4-2 Cisco Nexus Switch Situations

Issue	Solution
 Windows creates the NTFS partition ok, but then reports that "The hard disk containing the partition or free space you chose has a LUN greater than 0. Setup cannot continue". (Dell 1850 server). Windows reboots successfully, but then gets stuck during the GUI portion of the installation right from the beginning. (HP DL385G2 server). 	 Set up the FCoE switch ports as follows: no priority-flow-control mode on untagged cos 0 flowcontrol receive on flowcontrol send on spanning-tree port type edge
The system is showing an excessive number of I/O timeouts as a result of the switch routing frames to the incorrect port.	Ensure that the LACP is not used on the FCoE port.

Event Trace Messages

ELS Log Messages (0100-0130)

lpfc_mes0100: FLOGI failure - ulpStatus: x%x, ulpWord[4]:x%x

Description	An ELS FLOGI command that was sent to the fabric failed.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	Check the fabric connection.

lpfc_mes0101: FLOGI completes successfully - NPortId: x%x, RaTov: x%x, EdTov: x%x

Description	An ELS FLOGI command that was sent to the fabric succeeded.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0102: PLOGI completes to NPortId: x%x

Description	The adapter performed an N PLOGI into a remote NPort.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0103: PRLI completes to NPortId: x%x, TypeMask: x%x, Fcp2Recovery: x%x

Description	The adapter performed a PRLI into a remote NPort.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0104: ADISC completes to NPortId x%x

Description	The adapter performed an ADISC into the remote NPort.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0105: LOGO completes to NPortId: x%x

Description	The adapter performed a LOGO into a remote NPort.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0112: ELS command: x%x, received from NPortId: x%x

Description	Received the specific ELS command from a remote NPort.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.
Remarks	lpfc_mes0114 and lpfc_mes0115 are also recorded for more details if the corresponding severity level is set. You can use the XRI to match the messages.

lpfc_mes0114: PLOGI chkparm OK

Description	Received a PLOGI from a remote NPORT and its FC service parameters match this	
	adapter. Request can be accepted.	
Severity	Information	
Log	LOG_ELS verbose	
Action	No action needed, informational.	
See Also	lpfc_mes0112	

Ipfc_mes0115: Unknown ELS command: x%x, received from NPortId: x%x\n

Description	Received an unsupported ELS command from a remote NPORT.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	Check remote NPORT for potential issue.
See Also	lpfc_mes0112

Ipfc_mes0128: Accepted ELS command: OpCode: x%x

Description	Accepted an ELS command from a remote NPORT.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0129: Rejected ELS command: OpCode: x%x

Description	Rejected ELS command from a remote NPORT.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0130: ELS command error: ulpStatus: x%x, ulpWord[4]: x%x

Description	ELS command failure.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	Check remote NPORT for potential issue.

Discovery Log Messages (0202-0262)

Ipfc_mes0202: Start Discovery: Link Down Timeout: x%x, initial PLOGICount:%d

Description	Device discovery/rediscovery after FLOGI, FAN or RSCN has started. TMO is the current value of the soft link time. It is used for link discovery against the LinkDownTime set in parameters. DISC CNT is number of nodes being discovered for link discovery. RSCN CNT is number of nodes being discovered for RSCN discovery. There will be value in either DISC CNT or RSCN CNT depending on which discovery is being performed.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0204: Discovered SCSI Target: WWN word 0: x%x, WWN word 1: x%x, DID: x%x:, RPI: x%x

Description	Device discovery found SCSI target.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0214: RSCN received: Word count:%d

Description	Received RSCN from fabric.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0215: RSCN processed: DID: x%x

Description	Processed RSCN from fabric.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0225: Device Discovery completes

Description	This indicates successful completion of device (re)discovery after a link up.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0229: Assign SCSIId x%x to WWN word 0: x%x, WWN word 1: x%x, NPortId x%x

Description	The driver assigned a SCSI ID to a discovered mapped FCP target. BindType - 0: DID 1:WWNN 2:WWPN
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0230: Cannot assign SCSIId to WWN word 0: x%x, WWN word 1: x%x, NPortId x%x

Description	SCSI ID assignment failed for discovered target.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	Review system configuration.

lpfc_mes0232: Continue discovery at sequence number%d, PLOGIs remaining:%d

Description	NPort discovery sequence continuation.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0235: New RSCN being deferred due to RSCN in process

Description	An RSCN was received while processing a previous RSCN.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0236: Issuing command to name server" type: x%x

Description	The driver is issuing a nameserver request to the fabric. Also recorded if a GID_FT is sent.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.
See Also	lpfc_mes0239 or lpfc_mes0240

lpfc_mes0238: NameServer response DID count:%d

Description	Received a response from fabric name server with N DIDs.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0239: NameServer Response: next DID value: x%x

Description	The driver received a nameserver response. And, this message is recorded for each DID included in the response data.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.
See Also	lpfc_mes0236

lpfc_mes0240: NameServer Response Error - CmdRsp:x%x, ReasonCode: x%x, Explanation x%x

Description	The driver received a nameserver response containing a status error.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_DISCOVERY verbose
Action	Check Fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.
See Also	lpfc_mes0236

lpfc_mes0256: Start node timer on NPortId: x%x, timeout value:%d

Description	Starting timer for disconnected target with NPort ID and timeout value.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0260: Stop node timer on NPortId: x%x, SCSIId: x%x

Description	Discontinuing timer for reconnected target with NPort ID and SCSI ID.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0262: Node timeout on NPortId: x%x, SCSIId: x%x

Description	Disconnected NPort ID, SCSI ID has failed to reconnect within timeout limit.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	Review system configuration.

Mailbox Log Messages (0310-0326)

Ipfc_mes0310: Mailbox command timeout - HBA unresponsive

Description	A Mailbox command was posted to the adapter and did not complete within 30 seconds. sync - 0: asynchronous mailbox command is issued 1: synchronous mailbox command is issued.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_MBOX verbose
Action	This error could indicate a software driver or firmware issue. If no I/O is going through the adapter, reboot the system. If these issues persist, report these errors to Technical Support.

Ipfc_mes0326: Reset HBA - HostStatus: x%x

Description	The adapter has been reset.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_MBOX verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

INIT Log Messages (0400-0463)

Ipfc_mes0400: Initializing discovery module: OptionFlags: x%x

Description	Driver discovery process is being initialized with internal flags as shown.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes0401: Initializing SLI module: DeviceId: x%x, NumMSI:%d

Description	PCI function with device id and MSI count as shown is being initialized for service level interface.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0405: Service Level Interface (SLI) 2 selected\n");

Description	Service Level Interface level 2 is selected.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes0406: Service Level Interface (SLI) 3 selected\n");

Description	Service Level Interface level 3 is selected.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_ELS verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

• —	lpfc_mes0436: Adapter not ready: hostStatus: x%x		
Description	The adapter failed during powerup diagnostics after it was reset.		
Severity	Error		
Log	LOG_INIT verbose		
Action	This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to Technical Support.		
lpfc_mes0442: Ad	apter failed to init, CONFIG_PORT, mbxStatus x%x		
Description	Adapter initialization failed when issuing CONFIG_PORT mailbox command.		
Severity	Error		
Log	LOG_INIT verbose		
Action	This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to Technical Support.		
lpfc_mes0446: Ad	apter failed to init, CONFIG_RING, mbxStatus x%x		
Description	Adapter initialization failed when issuing CFG_RING mailbox command.		
Description Severity	1		
	CFG_RING mailbox command.		
Severity	CFG_RING mailbox command. Error		
Severity Log Action	CFG_RING mailbox command. Error LOG_INIT verbose This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to		
Severity Log Action	CFG_RING mailbox command. Error LOG_INIT verbose This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to Technical Support.		
Severity Log Action Ipfc_mes0454: Ad	CFG_RING mailbox command. Error LOG_INIT verbose This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to Technical Support. apter failed to init, INIT_LINK, mbxStatus x%x Adapter initialization failed when issuing		
Severity Log Action Ipfc_mes0454: Ad Description	CFG_RING mailbox command. Error LOG_INIT verbose This error could indicate a hardware or firmware issue. If issues persist report these errors to Technical Support. Apter failed to init, INIT_LINK, mbxStatus x%x Adapter initialization failed when issuing INIT_LINK mailbox command.		

lpfc_mes0436: Adapter not ready: hostStatus: x%x

Infc	_mes0458:	Bring	Adapter	online
ipic_	_111030430.	Dring	Adapter	onnic

Description	The FC driver has received a request to bring the adapter online. This may occur when running HBAnyware.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_INIT verbose
Action	None required.

lpfc_mes0460: Bring Adapter offline

Description	The FC driver has received a request to bring the adapter offline. This may occur when running HBAnyware.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_INIT verbose
Action	None required.

lpfc_mes0463: Adapter firmware error: hostStatus: x%x, lnfo1(0xA8): x%x, lnfo2 (0xAC): x%x

Description	The firmware has interrupted the host with a firmware trap error.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_INIT verbose
Action	Review HBAnyware diagnostic dump information.

FCP Log Messages (0701-0749)

Ipfc_mes0701: Issue Abort Task Set to PathId: x%x, TargetId: x%x, Lun: x%x

Description	The driver has issued a task management command for the indicated SCSI device address.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_INIT verbose
Action	Review system configuration.

lpfc_mes0703: Issue LUN reset to Pathld: x%x, TargetId: x%x, Lun: x%x, Did: x%x		
Description	Storport is requesting a reset of the indicated LUN.	
Severity	Warning	
Log	LOG_INIT verbose	
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.	
lpfc_mes0713: Issued Target Reset to Pathld:%d, TargetId:%d, Did: x%x		
Description	Storport detected that it needs to abort all I/O to a specific target. This results in login reset to the target in question.	
Severity	Warning	
Log	LOG_FCP verbose	
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.	
See Also	lpfc_mes0714	
lpfc_mes0714: Issued Bus Reset for PathId:%d		
Description	Storport is requesting the driver to reset all targets on this adapter.	
Severity	Warning	
Log	LOG_FCP verbose	
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.	
See Also	lpfc_mes0713	
lpfc_mes0716: FCP Read Underrun, expected%d, residual%d		
Description	FCP device provided less data than was requested.	
Severity	Supplement Information	
Log	LOG_FCP verbose	
Action	No action needed, informational.	
See Also	lpfc_mes0730	

x%x, ulpWord[7]: x%x

	N/0A
Description	The specified device failed an I/O FCP command.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Check the state of the target in question.
Remarks	lpfc_mes0730 is also recorded if it is a FCP Rsp error.

Ipfc_mes0729: FCP command error: ulpStatus: x%x, ulpWord[4]: x%x, XRI:

lpfc_mes0730: FCP response error: Flags: x%x, SCSI status: x%x, Residual:%d

Description	The FCP command failed with a response error.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Check the state of the target in question.
Remark	lpfc_mes0716, lpfc_mes0734, lpfc_mes0736 or lpfc_mes0737 is also recorded for more details if the corresponding SEVERITY level is set.
See Also	lpfc_mes0729

lpfc_mes0734: Read Check: fcp_parm: x%x, Residual x%x

Description	The issued FCP command returned a Read Check Error.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Check the state of the target in question.
See Also	lpfc_mes0730

Ipfc_mes0737: SCSI check condition, SenseKey x%x, ASC x%x, ASCQ x%x, SrbStatus: x%x

The issued FCP command resulted in a Check Condition.
Warning
LOG_FCP verbose
Review SCSI error code values.
lpfc_mes0730

lpfc_mes0747: Target reset complete: Pathld: x%x, TargetId: x%x, Did: x%x

Description	A target reset operation has completed.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.
Remark	See also Message 0713.

Ipfc_mes0748: Lun reset complete: PathId: x%x, TargetId: x%x, Lun: x%x

Description	A LUN reset operation has completed.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.
Remark	See also Message 0703.

Ipfc_mes0749: Abort task set complete: Did: x%x, SCSIId: x%x

Description	A task management has completed.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_FCP verbose
Action	Review system configuration. Possible side-effect of cluster operations.
Remark	See also Message 0701.

Link Log Messages (1302-1306)

lpfc_mes1302: Invalid speed for this board:%d, forced link speed to auto

Description	The driver is re-initializing the link speed to auto-detect.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	None required.

lpfc_mes1303: Link Up event: tag: x%x, link speed:%dG, topology (0 = Pt2Pt, 1 = AL):%d

Description	A link up event was received. It is also possible for multiple link events to be received together.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	If numerous link events are occurring, check physical connections to the FC network.
Remarks	lpfc_mes1304 is recorded if Map Entries > 0 and the corresponding mode and SEVERITY level is set.

lpfc_mes1305: Link down even: tag x%x

Description	A link down event was received.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	If numerous link events are occurring, check physical connections to the FC network.

lpfc_mes1306: Link Down timeout

Description	The link was down for greater than the configuration parameter (HLinkTimeOut) seconds. All I/O associated with the devices on this link will be failed.
Severity	Warning
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	Check adapter cable/connection to SAN.

Tag Messages (1400-1401)

lpfc_mes1400: Tag out of range: ContextIndex: x%x, MaxIndex: x%x, ulpCommand: x%x

Description	Firmware has generated an invalid response.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	Review hardware configuration. Contact Emulex Technical Support.

Ipfc_mes1401: Invalid tag: ContextIndex: x%x, ulpCommand: x%x

Description	Firmware has generated an invalid response.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_LINK_EVENT verbose
Action	Review hardware configuration. Contact Emulex Technical Support.

NPIV Messages (1800-1899)

Ipfc_mes1800: NPIV FDISC failure VPI: x%x Error x%x Reason x%x

Description	Virtual Port fails on a FDISC to the switch with the error and reason listed.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_NPIV verbose
Action	Check to ensure the switch supports NPIV.

Ipfc_mes1801: Memory allocation failure for NPIV port: x%x

Description	Fails to allocated the block of memory for the Virtual Port.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_NPIV verbose
Action	Check to ensure system has sufficient kernel
	memory.

Ipfc_mes1802: Exceeded the MAX NPIV port: x%x

Description	Exceeded the number of Virtual Port allows on the adapter.
Severity	Error
Log	LOG_NPIV verbose
Action	Reduce the number of Virtual Ports.

Ipfc_mes1803: Virtual Port: x%x VPI:x%x successfully created.

Description	Virtual Port ID is successfully created.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_NPIV verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes1804: Removing Virtual Port: x%x VPI:x%x

Description	Removing Virtual Port ID.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_NPIV verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

ELS Messages (1900-1999)

Ipfc_mes1900: x%x sends ELS_AUTH_CMD x%x with TID x%x

Description	An ELS_AUTH_CMD is sent.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes1901: x%x sends ELS_AUTH_REJECT x%x x%x to x%x

Description	An ELS_AUTH_REJECT is sent.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes1902: Receives x%x from x%x in state x%x

Description	Receives an ELS_AUTH_CMD.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

lpfc_mes1903: Receives ELS_AUTH_RJT x%x x%x

Description	Receives an ELS_AUTH_REJECT.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes1904: Authentication ends for x%x with status x%x (%d %d)

Description	Authentication is done.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Ipfc_mes1905: Authentication policy change for local x%08x x%08x remote x%08x%08x

Description	Authentication policy has been changed.
Severity	Information
Log	LOG_FCSP verbose
Action	No action needed, informational.

Troubleshooting the NIC Drivers

The following table provides troubleshooting information for the NIC drivers.

Table 4-3 Troubleshooting the NIC Drivers

Issue	Answer/Solution
Performance is not as expected.	The adapter may be installed in the wrong type of PCIe slot. Verify that the adapter has been properly installed. If TOE is enabled and performance is not as high as expected, the operating system may not offload TOE connections. For more information, see "TCP Offloading (TOE)" on page 112.
There are frequent event log entries for link changes, or statistics that show more than expected CRC errors.	Unload and reload the driver to reset available target IDs. Ensure that the SAN configuration is correct prior to reloading the driver. This clears the driver's consistent binding table and frees target IDs for new target nodes.
The driver fails to load, and an event log entry states that the driver failed to load due to memory constraints.	There may not be enough memory installed in the system to provide sufficient memory for all devices installed in the system. Try installing more memory if possible.
Unpredictable results occur when flow control setting differs among PCI functions.	If multiple PCI functions are exposed for a single 10-Gb/s Ethernet port, such as in blade configurations, the flow control parameter must be set the same on all adapters for the port. Results are unpredictable if the setting differs among PCI functions because this is a shared property of the 10-Gb/s port.
On servers that support PCIe hot unplug, the system may hang or produce a bugcheck if a PCIe hot unplug or replace is attempted.	Hot unplug is not supported in this release.
When Wake on LAN is set through the advanced properties page, the system does not wake when receiving a magic packet or a packet that would normally wake the system.	The system may not support Wake on LAN on the PCIe slot in which the adapter is installed. Check the system documentation to determine whether the system is capable of Wake on LAN operation. A system BIOS setting may not be correct for Wake on LAN to work as expected. Check the system documentation to determine whether Wake on LAN must be enabled in the system BIOS.
	Wake on LAN may not be supported by the chipset as reported by the firmware. The driver reports the value that is reported by the firmware.
	The system may not go to a lower power state because another software component, device, or driver is preventing it from doing so.
	Microsoft provides several useful references for troubleshooting Wake on LAN configuration issues in the Microsoft TechNet Library on the Microsoft website.

Issue	Answer/Solution
 When running Windows Server 2008, the computer restarts and shows various Stop error codes when performing one of the following operations: Enabling or disabling TCP Chimney Offload Changing the network adapter settings Upgrading the NIC drivers 	Apply the 979614 hotfix as described on the Microsoft website.
When an NDIS driver is being installed manually on a Windows Server 2008 system, the installer installs the first driver it finds, even if it is not the latest version of the driver.	Windows Server 2008 picks up the first available driver it finds when an NDIS driver is being installed manually. Thus, an NDIS5 driver will be installed even if a Windows NDIS6 driver is available. An event log message advises you to update to the latest driver for best performance.
The system crashes or appears to hang. In the case of a hang, there could be a message indicating that the driver experienced a hardware malfunction.	 There are several possible causes for this issue. Certain systems require an updated BIOS to properly manage the power states of newer Intel and AMD processors. Check with your OEM for information regarding BIOS and firmware updates that may be required to run well with the latest releases of the Windows operating systems. Also, certain BIOS settings may be required. For example, it is recommended that you disable any low power processor states and low power settings for PCle. On certain AMD systems, it is possible the intelppm.sys driver is enabled, and should not be. To query this system driver's run state, log in as administrator and at the command line type sc query intelppm If the results indicate that the intelppm driver is running, you must disable it. At the command line type sc config intelppm start= disabled
	On all systems, it may be necessary to set the power options to High Performance. See the operating system documentation for details.

Table 4-3 Troubleshooting the NIC Drivers (Continued)

Monitoring TCP Offloads

To monitor TCP offloads, in a command window type

netstat -t

This command indicates the offload state for each TCP connection of the system.

Windows Server 2008 (and later versions) allows TCP offloads in more scenarios than previous versions of Windows Server. In particular, TCP offloads may occur with the Windows firewall enabled.

TCP Offload Failure

The following table lists common reasons why TCP offloads do not occur and their suggested fixes.

Table 4-4 Troubleshooting TCP Offload Failures

Reasons for No TCP Offload	Solutions
Chimney offload is disabled on the system.	For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2 To determine whether Chimney offload is enabled or disabled, at the command line type
	netsh interface tcp show global
	To enable Chimney offload, at the command line type
	netsh interface tcp set global chimney=enabled
	To disable Chimney offload, at the command line type
	netsh interface tcp set global chimney=disabled
	For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2
	To verify whether offloading is enabled type
	netstat -nt
	This command displays a list of connections and their offloading state.
Offloads are disabled for specific ports or applications.	To view any TCP ports or applications that may be configured to disable TCP offload, at the command line type
	netsh interface tcp show chimneyports
	netsh interface tcp show chimneyapplications
A third-party firewall is running.	The Windows firewall does not affect TCP offload, but third-party firewalls may prevent TCP offloads. Uninstall third-party firewall software to allow TCP offloads.
In the network properties, some intermediate drivers prevent offloading.	Go to Network Connections > Properties and clear check boxes for unused drivers. In particular, Network Load Balancing and some third-party drivers prevent offloads.
IPSec is enabled.	Disable IPSec.
IP NAT is enabled.	Disable IP NAT.
The driver supports an Advanced Property to disable TCP offloading.	Make sure TCP offloading is enabled.
The TCP connection uses using IPv6.	The driver supports offloading TCP connections only with IPv4.

Note: Packet sniffing applications such as Ethereal or Microsoft Network Monitor, do not see TCP offloaded packets.

Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver

Troubleshooting the Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration

Note: The LACP cannot be used on the an iSCSI port.

Table 4-5 Cisco Nexus Switch Situations for iSCSI

Issue	Solution
The system is showing an excessive number of I/O timeouts as a result of the switch routing frames to the incorrect port.	Ensure that the LACP is not used on the iSCSI port.

iSCSI Driver Troubleshooting

The following table provides troubleshooting information for the iSCSI driver.

Table 4-6 Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver

Issue	Answer/Solution
Overall failure.	Use the iSCSISelect utility to clear the Adapter Configuration. See the <i>Emulex Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols</i> <i>User Manual</i> for instructions.
The driver loads successfully, but there are event 11 entries in the event log for the iSCSI driver.	The most common cause is that the UCNA link is down. See "iSCSI Error Log on Windows Server 2008" on page 165 and look for specific event codes to confirm.
Unable to create a memory dump file on a system booted over iSCSI.	Make sure the disk has enough free disk space to create the dump file. If a full memory dump is selected, the disk must have free space at least equivalent to the amount of physical memory in the system.
Unable to log in to target from WMI.	 Ensure that the IP address on the UCNA is valid and the network connection has been set up to reach the target. If login is attempted after discovering the target, ensure that the correct UCNA port has been selected for the login.
The iSCSI WMI GUI shows the target state as connected, but no LUNs are seen from the disk manager.	Verify that the UCNA name used to connect to the target matches the UCNA name configured on the iSCSI target.
Multipath configuration shows duplicate LUNs on the disk manager.	Ensure that MPIO software is installed and the login options have selected the MPIO flag. On Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2 Operating Systems, the server role must be set up for Multipath. See the <i>Emulex Boot for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and</i> <i>RoCE Protocols User Manual</i> for more information on MPIO.
Multipath configuration takes a long time to fail over or failover does not occur.	Ensure that LDTO settings and ETO settings have been configured for MPIO. These values must be set to 0. For more information, see "Configuring LDTO and ETO on the Windows Server" on page 123.
Sendtargets to an IET target fails because it violates the iSCSI specification.	If you still want to add an IET target, you must add the target manually. This issue affects Sendtargets only.

Issue	Answer/Solution
The following POST error message appears: Initiator iSCSI Name mismatch, Please use iSCSISelect to set a single name for all controllers. Press <ctrl><s> to enter iSCSISelect. (Reboot required)</s></ctrl>	In the iSCSI BIOS, the Emulex iSCSI initiator name may be different if more than one OneConnect UCNAs are in the system. This message appears if the iSCSI initiator name is different on multiple controllers. You must enter iSCSISelect and save a new initiator name on the first iSCSISelect menu window so that the iSCSI initiator name on all controllers match. All logins from the multiple controllers will use the new name. See the <i>Emulex Boot</i> <i>for NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, and RoCE Protocols User Manual</i> for more information.
When an iscsicli logouttarget command is issued back-to-back in a script, event 12 errors from the PlugPlayManager are seen in the Windows Event Viewer. The error message is similar to this string: The device 'SE ISCSI 00 SCSI Disk Device' (SCSI\Disk&Ven_ SE_ISCSI&Prod_00&Rev_3.64\5 &17659873&2&020000) disappeared from the system without first being prepared for removal.	This behavior is not specific to the OneConnect UCNA.
On a system running Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2008 R2, the iSCSI driver fails to load after many iterations of enable/disable from Device Manager. Because the system failed to allocate contiguous uncached extension memory, the iSCSI driver failed to load, and an attention icon is displayed next to the OneConnect iSCSI device. The Device Status shows "This device cannot start. (Code 10)", and an Event 11 error is logged in the Windows system event log for the iSCSI driver with 0x31840006 in the 5th DWORD.	There is no workaround for this issue.
When an iSCSI UCNA is used to log in to an iSCSI target and the LUN configuration on the target is changed, neither the UCNA nor the WMI GUI see the updated LUN configuration.	If an iSCSI target provides an asynchronous event notification to the UCNA when its logical unit inventory has changed, the iSCSI driver initiates a bus rescan and the LUNs are updated dynamically. However, if an iSCSI target does not provide an asynchronous event notification, the LUN list is not updated dynamically. Perform a manual rescan in Disk Management.

Table 4-6 Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver (Continued)

Issue	Answer/Solution
A login to new target fails after Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service is installed.	When Microsoft iSCSI software is installed, the service chooses a default IQN name for the UCNA. The Microsoft iSCSI service issues the request to the iSCSI driver via the WMI interface to set this new IQN name. Therefore, any IQN name that was configured earlier (such as by using iSCSISelect) will be overridden and the new IQN name will be in effect.
	Although this will not affect existing boot sessions and persistent sessions, new target logins could fail because the new IQN name does not match the incoming IQN name configured on the target. After the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service is installed, the initiator name must be renamed to the previous name configured from the WMI GUI.
 When software-based iSCSI targets are logged into the UCNA, Event ID 56 (Driver SCSI (000000)). Appears in the Windows event viewer. This issue has been observed on Windows Server 2008 R2 under the following conditions: The iSCSI target is a software-based target (MSiSCSI, IET, StarWind) that uses a local hard drive or a RAM disk for its backend LUN. Different UCNA ports are involved in the login. 	This occurs caused because of an issue with the data reported by the iSCSI target in the Product Identification field in response to the standard inquiry from the UCNA. This field should be unique among different targets' LUNs, but software-based targets report the same pre-formatted data for all the LUNs across all targets. When Windows encounters the same Product Identification field for different LUNs with the same Bus Target Lun field, it records error in the event log. No other effect has been found as a result of this behavior. The workaround for this error is to use non-overlapping LUN numbers for the various LUNs across the various iSCSI targets. On the iSCSI target system, LUNs can be numbered sequentially; they do not have to start at zero.
A SAS controller is present on the system.	

Table 4-6 Troubleshooting the iSCSI Driver (Continue)

Appendix A. Error and Event Log Information

FC/FCoE Error and Event Logs

Viewing the FC/FCoE Error Log

The system event log is a standard feature of Windows Server software. All events logged by the Emulex Storport Miniport will be Event ID 11 with source "elxfc/elxcna".

To view the error LOG:

- 1. Open the Event Viewer window by doing one of the following:
 - Click Start>Programs>Administrative Tools>Event Viewer.
 - Right-click **My Computer**, **Manage** and **Event Viewer** in **Computer Management**.

The Event Viewer window is displayed.

- 2. Double-click any event with the source name ELXFC/ELXCNA.
- 3. Examine the entry at offset 0x10 and Event ID 11. The Emulex event code is found in byte 0010 and supplementary data is in the byte offsets 0011 through 0013.

For example, in Figure A-1:

byte 0010 = 9b, byte 0011 = 00, byte 0012 = 29 and byte 0013 = 00

vent	Prope	rties			? ×
Event					
D <u>a</u> te: Ti <u>m</u> e: Typ <u>e</u> : <u>U</u> ser: C <u>o</u> mputer:	11/2/2007 5:52:19 PM Error N/A EMULEX-D	Event [D:			↑ ↓ ₽
The local message be able to Help and	Computer ma DLL files to d use the /AU	iy not have t isplay messa IXSOURCE=	he neces iges from i flag to re	(elxstor) cannot sary registry inform a remote compute ritrieve this descrip iformation is part o	nation or er. You may tion; see
	Bytes O W	ords			
0008: 0	0f 00 10 00 00 00 9b 00 29	00 бъ 00	04 c0	h. à	~ ~
			ж	Cancel	Apply

Figure A-1 Event Properties

Severity Scheme

When the Event Viewer is launched, there are three branches: Application, Security and System. All ELXFC/ELXCNA error log entries are found under the System branch, and all ELXFC/ELXCNA error log entries have the Event Viewer severity level of "error".

- A severe error code indicates that the driver, firmware or adapter is behaving abnormally and your intervention is required to correct the issue.
- A malfunction error code indicates that there is an issue with the system, but your intervention is not required.
- A command error code indicates that an event has transpired, but does not require your intervention. An event may be issue-oriented, such as an invalid fabric command sub-type. An event may not be issue-oriented, such as exhausted retries on PLOGI or PDISC.

Related Driver Parameter: LogError

The LogError driver parameter determines the minimum severity level to enable entry of a logged error into the system. See the Configuration Section for instructions on how to set driver parameters.

- If set to 0 = all errors regardless of severity are logged.
- If set to 1 = severe, malfunction and command level errors are logged.
- If set to 2 = both severe and malfunction errors are logged.
- If set to 3 = only severe errors are logged.

Note: Set LogError to 1 if you are troubleshooting SAN connectivity or device discovery issues.

Format of an Error Log Entry

An error log entry will take the form of an event. This event is described by:

- Date (date entry was logged)
- Source (elxfc/elxcna)
- Time (time entry was logged)
- Category (none)
- Type (error)
- Event id (0)
- User (N/A)
- Computer (name of computer)

Error Codes Tables

Severe Errors

Table A-1 Severe Errors

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation
0x00	Invalid link speed selection (SLI2-3 mode)
0x01	READ_REV failed (SLI2-3 mode)
0x02	Invalid adapter type (LightPulse)
0x03	Invalid adapter type (LightPulse)
0x04	CONFIG_PORT failed
0x06	READ_CONFIG_failed
0x07	CONFIG_RING 0 failed
0x08	CONFIG_RING 2 failed
0x09	CONFIG_RING 1 failed
0x0A	CONFIG_RING 3 failed
0x0B	INIT_LINK failed (SLI2-3 mode)
0x0C	INIT_LINK failed (SLI2-3 mode)
0x0D	READ_REV failed (SLI2-3 mode)
0x0E	Invalid adapter type (LightPulse)
0x0F	Invalid adapter type (LightPulse)
0x10	CONFIG_PORT failed (reinitialization)
0x12	READ_CONFIG command failed (reinitialization)
0x13	CONFIG_RING 0 failed (reinitialization)
0x14	CONFIG_RING 1 failed (reinitialization)
0x15	CONFIG_RING 2 failed (reinitialization)
0x16	CONFIG_RING 3 failed (reinitialization)
0x17	Unresponsive adapter port (SLI2-3 mode)
0x1C	Firmware trap: info1 (SLI2-3 mode)
0x1D	Firmware trap: info2 (SLI2-3 mode)
0x1E	Over-temperature error condition (LightPulse)
0x1F	Firmware-initiated adapter port reset (LightPulse)
0x20	Adapter port error attention (LightPulse)
0x22	Over-temperature warning (LightPulse)
0x23	Returned to safe temperature (LightPulse)
0x24	Invalid response tag (SLI2-3 mode)

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation
0x25	Invalid response tag (SLI2-3 mode)
0x26	Invalid response tag (SLI2-3 mode)
0x27	Invalid response sequence (SLI2-3 mode)
0x28	Failure on REG_LOGIN mailbox command
0x29	Unable to initiate fabric binding operation
0x2A	Attempted ADISC to non-existent node
0x2B	Failure on iocb context allocation
0x2C	Unable to initiate nport unbinding operation
0x2D	Unable to initiate nport binding operation
0x30	Failure on mailbox context allocation
0x7C	Menlo initialization error
0x7D	Menlo initialization error
0x7E	Menlo initialization error
0xA0	Failed to initialize adapter port (OneConnect)
0xA1	Failed to initialize adapter port (LightPulse)
0xC0	Insufficient revision level for STORPORT.SYS
0xC1	Failed to allocate miniport un-cached extension
0xC2	Insufficient un-cached extension space
0xC3	Port initialization failure (OneConnect)
0xC4	Port initialization failure (LightPulse)
0xC5	Utility mailbox command error
0xC6	SLI4 Pre-initialization failure
0xD3	NPIV memory allocation failure
0xE0	Unable to allocate exchange for unsolicited ELS command
0xE1	Mis-configured ports event on indicated port, link, and status. (Bits 31-24: Port ID; Bits 23-16: Link ID; Bits 15-8: Link status.)
0xF0	Unresponsive adapter port (SLI4 mode)
0xF4	ULP Unrecoverable Error: low part (SLI4 mode)
0xF5	ULP Unrecoverable Error: high part (SLI4 mode)
0xF6	ARM Unrecoverable Error (SLI4 mode)
0xF7	READ_NV failed (SLI4 mode)
0xF8	READ_NV failed (SLI4 mode)
0xF9	READ_REV failed (SLI4 mode)

 Table A-1
 Severe Errors (Continued)

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation
0xFA	READ_CONFIG failed (SLI4 mode)
0xFB	Failed to post header templates (SLI4 mode)
0xFC	Invalid Completion Queue Entry (SLI4 mode)
0xFD	Invalid Completion Queue Entry (SLI4 mode)
0xFE	Invalid Completion Queue Entry (SLI4 mode)

Table A-1	Severe Errors	(Continued)
-----------	---------------	-------------

Malfunction Errors

Table A-2 Malfunction Errors

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation
0x05	SET_VAR command failed
0x11	SET_VAR command failed (reinitialization)
0x21	Spurious mailbox command interrupt
0x31	Unrecognized mailbox command completion
0x32	Duplicate link attention: event tag unchanged
0x33	Invalid link attention: no link state indicated
0x34	Duplicate link attention: link state unchanged
0x35	Error reading common service parameters for port
0x36	Error reading common service parameters for fabric
0x37	Error reading common service parameters for nport
0x3B	Failed to create node object
0x3C	PRLI initiation failure
0x42	Exhausted retries on FLOGI
0x45	ELS command rejected
0x49	Exhausted retries on PLOGI
0x4E	World Wide Port Name mismatch on ADISC
0x4F	World Wide Node Name mismatch on ADISC
0x50	ADISC response failure
0x55	LOGO response failure
0x57	PRLI to non-existent node
0x5A	PRLI response error
0x5F	CT command error
0x62	Name server response error
0x66	State Change Notification registration failure

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation
0x6A	Unrecognized ELS command received
0x6F	Received PRLI from un-typed source
0x73	Failed to pend PRLI for authentication
0x77	Failed to allocate Node object
0x7A	REG_VPI failed
0xA3	Command context allocation failure
0xAB	SCSI command error
0xAC	Read check error
0xB0	Node timeout: device removal signaled to Storport

 Table A-2
 Malfunction Errors (Continued)

Command Errors

Table A-3 Command Errors

Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation		
0x43	Fabric login succeeded		
0x46	ELS command failed		
0x47	Exhausted retries on ELS command		
0x4A	PLOGI accepted		
0x56	LOGO accepted		
0x59	PRLI accepted		
0x63	Fabric name server response		
0x6B	ELS RSCN processed		
0x71	LOGO received from fabric		
0x79	FDISC accepted		
0xA2	SCSI address assigned to discovered target		
0xA4	Report LUNs error (initial I/O to discovered target)		
0xA5	Local error indication on FCP command		
0xA8	Data overrun		
0xA9	FCP command error		
0xAA	SCSI check condition		
0xAD	Local reject indication on FCP command		
0xAE	Error on SCSI pass-through command		
0xAF	Error on Menlo CT command		

Event Indicators

Table A-4 Ever			
Bits 0 - 7	Interpretation		
0x18	Port shutdown event (LightPulse)		
0x19	Port in off-line state (LightPulse)		
0x1A	Port in on-line state (LightPulse)		
0x1B	Port in off-line state (LightPulse)		
0xA7	Data underrun		
0xD0	NPIV Virtual Port creation success (Virtual Port Did in bits 8-31)		
0xD1	NPIV Virtual Port creation failed (Virtual Port index in bits 8-31)		
0xD2	NPIV Virtual Port FDISC failed (Virtual Port index in bits 8-31)		
0xD4	Exceeded max Virtual Port supported (Virtual Port index in bits 8-31)		
0xD5	NPIV Virtual Port removal (Virtual Port Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE0	Authenticated successfully (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE1	Failed to authenticate (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE2	Authentication not support (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE3	Authentication ELS command timeout (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE4	Authentication transaction timeout (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE5	LS_RJT other than Logical Busy received for Authentication transaction (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE6	LS_RJT Logical Busy received for Authentication Transaction (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE7	Received Authentication Reject other than Restart (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE8	Received Authentication Reject Restart (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xE9	Received Authentication Negotiate (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xEA	Authentication spurious traffic (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
OxEB	Authentication policy has been changed (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
OxED	Same passed were set for both local and remote entities (remote Did in bits 8-31)		
0xF1	Port shutdown event (OneConnect)		
0xF2	Port in off-line state (OneConnect)		
0xF3	Port in on-line state (OneConnect)		

Viewing the FC/FCoE Event Log

Event Log Interpretation

- All events logged by Emulex Storport Miniport are in Event ID 11 with source "elxfc/elxcna".
- The Storport Miniport driver parameter LogErrors determines what type of events are logged by the driver; the default setting is "3" which logs only events of a SEVERE nature; the optional setting of "2" logs events of both SEVERE and MALFUNCTION type; the optional setting of "1" logs events of SEVERE, MALFUNCTION and COMMAND type.

Note: For troubleshooting SAN connectivity or device discovery issues, set the LogErrors to 1.

• The Emulex event code is found in byte 0010 and supplementary data is in byte offsets 0011 through 0013.

Additional Event Log Information

The following tables are not comprehensive but do include those codes, which through Emulex's experiences in our support and testing environments, we feel are most likely to show up in SAN environments where issues occur.

ELS/FCP Command Error Status Codes

Internal firmware codes posted by the adapter firmware that explain why a particular ELS or FCP command failed at the FC level.

Explanation	Code
Remote Stop - Remote port sent an ABTS	0x2
Local Reject - Local Reject error detail	0x3
LS_RJT Received - Remote port sent LS_RJT	0x9
A_RJT Received - Remote port sent BA_RJT	0xA

Table A-5 ELS/FCP Command Error Status Codes

CT Command Response Codes

Codes that indicate the response to a FC Common Transport protocol command.

 Table A-6
 CT Command Response Codes

Explanation	Code
FC Common Transport Reject	0x8001
FC Common Transport Accept	0x8002

FC-CT Reject Reason Codes

Codes that indicate the reason a CT command was rejected.

Table A-7 FC-CT Reject Reason Codes

Explanation	Code
Invalid command code	0x01
Invalid version level	0x02
Logical busy	0x05
Protocol error	0x07

ELS Command Codes

FC protocol codes that describe what particular Extended Link Services command was sent.

Table A-8 ELS Command Codes

Explanation	Code
Link Service Reject (LS_RJT)	0x01
Accept (ACC)	0x02
N_Port Login (PLOGI)	0x03
Fabric Login (FLOGI	0x04
N_Port Logout (LOGO)	0x05
Process Login (PRLI)	0x20
Process Logout (PRLO)	0x21
Discover F_Port Service Params (FDISC)	0x51
Discover Address (ADISC)	0x52
Register State Change Notify (RSCN)	0x61

SCSI Status Codes

The SCSI status returned from a SCSI device which receives a SCSI command.

Table A-9 SCSI Status Codes

Explanation	Code
GOOD	0x00
CHECK CONDITION	0x02
BUSY	0x08
RESERVATION CONFLICT	0x18
QUEUE FULL	0x28

Local Reject Status Codes

Codes supplied by the Emulex adapter firmware which indicate why a command was failed by the adapter.

Table A-10	Local	Reject	Status	Codes
	Locar	Nejeer	Julius	COUCS

Explanation	Code
SEQUENCE TIMEOUT - Possible bad cable/link noise	0x02
INVALID RPI - Occurs when link goes down	0x04
NO XRI - Possible host or SAN problem	0x05
TX_DMA FAILED - Possible host system issue	0x0D
RX_DMA FAILED – Possible host system issue	0x0E
ILLEGAL FRAME - Possible bad cable/link noise	0x0F
NO RESOURCES - Port out of exchanges or logins	0x11
LOOP OPEN FAILURE - FC_AL port not responding	0x18
LINK DOWN - Queued cmds returned at link down	0x51A
OUT OF ORDER DATA - Possible bad cable or noise	0x1D

SRB Status Codes

SCSI Request Block status provided by the driver to the operating system based upon response from SCSI device in the SAN.

Explanation	Code
ERROR	0x04
BUSY	0x05
TIMEOUT	0x09
SELECTION TIMEOUT	0x0A
COMMAND TIMEOUT	0x0B
BUS RESET	0x0E
DATA OVERUN	0x12

ASC/ASCQ

Additional Sense Code/Additional Sense Code Qualifier information can be found in any SCSI specification document – these codes contain detailed information about the status/condition of the SCSI device in question.

Additional Notes on Selected Error Codes

These are error codes which may be seen more frequently than others or which indicate conditions that you might be able to solve by investigation and correction of issues in the SAN configuration.

Note: The nomenclature of "0x" is used as the prefix for the byte code fields because those byte codes are actually hex values.

Node Timeout (Code 0xAA)

This event code indicates that a particular device has not been found (if the message is logged during device discovery) or that a particular device has been removed from the fabric. If this message is seen, determine if there is something wrong with the connection of that device to the SAN (cables, switches or switch ports, status of the target device itself).

SCSI Command Error (0x9A) and SCSI Check Condition (code 0x9B)

Code 0x9A indicates that the SCSI command to a particular device was responded to with an error condition (the target and LUN information, along with the SCSI status, are provided).

In the specific case of code 0x9B, this code indicates that the device responded with the specific status of Check Condition – the ASC/ASCQ information provided in bytes 0x12 and 0x13 will allow you to find out what status is being reported by the target and determine if there is an action that can be performed to return the device to functional status.

Nameserver Response (Code 0x98)

This code is useful in determining if the expected number of targets in a SAN configuration are being presented by the nameserver to the requesting adapter. The number in byte 0x11 is the number of targets returned to the nameserver query made by the adapter – if the number of targets does not match expectations, examine the SAN configuration found in the switch tables and if that information shows targets or devices still missing, check connections between the switch ports and those devices.

Context Allocation Failures

There are a number of event codes for which the interpretation contains the phrase "context allocation failure" – these types of events are referring to the internal memory constructs of the Emulex Storport Miniport driver and as such are intended for Emulex design engineers' information. If you encounter this type of code, contact Emulex support for analysis and determination if that particular event may be an indicator of a failed adapter or of some issue with interaction between the adapter, the Emulex Storport Miniport driver, the host operating system, and the host memory.

Note: Context allocation failures are rare.

NIC Error and Event Logs

Viewing the NIC Error Log

For Windows Server operating systems, the network driver generates error codes in the system event log. These error codes can be viewed by using the Event Viewer application.

To view the error codes:

- 1. Click the **Start** tab on the bottom of the screen.
- 2. Click Run.
- 3. Type **eventvwr** and click **OK**.
- 4. Click Windows Log.
- 5. Click System.
- 6. Click the be2net error under System Events to show the event details.

RoCE Event Log

The Windows Device Manager generates error log codes if any errors occur during the installation of the NIC/RoCE driver. Each log contains a Message Id, Severity, and Symbolic Link. The Message Id is unique and tracks the error message if it is not displayed.

Table A-12 shows the list of error codes, the severity of the error, the message displayed, the meaning of the error, and recommended resolutions. When reporting an issue with the adapter to Emulex, check the event log and report any of these entries that may be present.

Message ID Hexadecimal/ Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x3F/63	Warning	<adapter>: Incorrect RoCE profile selected, select the RoCE-2 profile.</adapter>	Select the RoCE-2 profile.
0x3C/60	Warning	The adapter ran out of resources while creating the requested number of SMB Direct connections. Please reduce the connection count to a supported value.	Reduce the connection count to a supported value.
0x3B/59	Warning	RoCE is not enabled. Update the firmware and ensure that the RoCE-2 profile is selected.	Update the firmware and ensure that the RoCE-2 profile is selected in the OneCommand Manager application, the OneCommand Manager CLI, or the PXE Boot utility.

Table A-12 RoCE Event Log Entries

NIC Event Log

Windows Device Manager generates error log codes if any errors occur during the installation of the NIC driver. Each log contains a Message Id, Severity and Symbolic Link. The Message Id is unique and tracks the error message (if not displayed). Table A-13 shows the list of error codes, the severity of the error, the message displayed, the meaning of the error and recommended resolutions. When reporting an issue with the adapter to Emulex, check the event log and report any of these entries that may be present.

Message ID Hexadecimal/ Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution	
0x80000039	Warning	Firmware does not support GRE encapsulation. Encapsulation disabled.	Issue configuring NVRE hardware offloads. Update firmware on the OCe14000 adapter.	
0x4000003AL	Informational	N/A	N/A	
0x0000038L/56	Warning	The device firmware does not support ETS functionality in SR-IOV or multichannel mode.	Revert to default mode for ETS support.	
0x00037/55	Warning	This adapter may have an issue recovering from corrupted use of SR-IOV. Assigning an SR-IOV device to a Virtual Machine could leave the system vulnerable, and lead to instability. It is strongly recommended that you assign SR-IOV devices only to Virtual Machines that run trusted workloads, or consider disabling the use of SR-IOV.	physical adapter. SR-IOV should only be used when the VM has a trusted server administrator.	
0x00036/54	Warning	Incompatible optics- Replace with compatible optics for card to function.	Replace the incompatible SFP transceivers with compatible ones for the card to function correctly.	
0x00035/53	Warning	Optics of two types installed-Remove one optic or install matching pair of optics.	Remove one SFP transceiver or install a matching pair of SFP transceivers.	
0x00034/52	Warning	Optics faulted/incorrectly installed/not installed. Reseat optics, if issue not resolved, replace.	Reseat the SFP transceiver. If the issue is not resolved, replace it.	
0x00033/51	Warning	SR-IOV virtualization failed initialization. Check system BIOS settings, or disable SR-IOV for the adapter.	Check system BIOS settings, or disable SR-IOV for the adapter.	
0x00032/50	Warning	The Ethernet link is down due to PHY over-temperature condition. Improve cooling for the device.	Improve the cooling conditions for the device.	

Table A-13 NIC Event Log Entries

Message ID Hexadecimal/ Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x00031/49	Warning	RSS is limited to 4 queues. Enable Advanced Mode in the PXE BIOS to use up to 16 queues. This may require a firmware update.	Enable Advanced Mode in the PXE Select BIOS utility during boot to use up to 16 queues. This may require a firmware update. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware.
0x00030/48	Warning	SR-IOV is not enabled. Update the firmware, enable SR-IOV in the server BIOS, and enable SR-IOV and Advanced Mode in the PXE BIOS.	Update the firmware, enable SR-IOV in the server BIOS, and enable SR-IOV and Advanced Mode in the PXE Select BIOS utility. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware.
0x0002f/47	Warning	VMQ offload is disabled. Disable SR/IOV support in PXE BIOS to use VMQ.	Disable SR-IOV support in PXE BIOS to use VMQ.
0x0002e/46	Error	Device is not supported on Windows 7 Operating System.	
0x0002d/45	Error	Error recovery failed. The device is no longer operational. Update all drivers and firmware.	See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware and drivers.
0x0002c/44	Warning	Error recovery is disabled on the system. The device is no longer operational.	This message is informational.
0x0002b/43	Informational	The driver successfully recovered from an error.	This message is informational.
0x0002a/42	Warning	Legacy driver loaded. Move to the NDIS 6.20 driver for Windows Server 2008 R2 for best performance.	
0x0029/41	Warning	Legacy driver loaded. Move to the NDIS 6.x driver for Windows Server 2008 for best performance.	
0x0028/40	Warning	The firmware is outdated and does not support TOE offloads for this driver. Update the firmware.	The firmware and the driver are not compatible versions. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware and drivers.
0x0026/38	Warning	The device firmware does not support RSS functionality for this network adapter.	The firmware and the driver are not compatible versions. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware and drivers.

Table A-13 NIC Event Log Entries (Continued)

Message ID Hexadecimal/	Carrie		December 1 Dec. 1 1
Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x0025/37	Warning	The device firmware does not support TCP offload functionality.	The firmware and the driver are not compatible versions. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware and drivers.
0x0024/36	Error	The device firmware does not support network functionality.	The firmware and the driver are not compatible versions. See the Downloads section of the Emulex website for compatible firmware and drivers.
0x0023/35	Warning	The Ethernet link is down due to a remote fault.	The Ethernet link is down due to the remote partner signaling a fault. Check the peer device for errors.
0x0022/34	Warning	The Ethernet link is down due to a local fault.	The Ethernet link is down due to a link-down event detected at the driver.
0x0021/33	Informational	Network device is operating in Gen2 mode and installed in a 4x PCIe slot.	For best performance, install the adapter in an 8x Gen2 PCle slot. Note: A 16x slot will not provide any additional performance.
0x0020/32	Informational	The network device is operating in Gen2 mode and installed in a 1x PCIe slot.	For best performance, install the adapter in an 8x Gen2 PCle slot. Note: A 16x slot will not provide any additional performance.
0x001f/31	Informational	The network device is operating in Gen1 mode and installed in a 8x PCIe slot.	For best performance, install the adapter in an 8x Gen2 PCle slot. Note: A 16x slot will not provide any additional performance.
0x001e/30	Informational	The network device is operating in Gen1 mode and installed in a 4x PCIe slot.	For best performance, install the adapter in an 8x Gen1 PCle slot. Note: A 16x slot will not provide any additional performance.
0x001d/29	Informational	The network device is operating in Gen1 mode and installed in a 1x PCIe slot.	For best performance, install the adapter in an 8x Gen1 PCle slot. Note: A 16x slot will not provide any additional performance.
0x001c/28	Error	Vital product data is not initialized correctly.	Use the offline flash utility to reconfigure the device.
0x0015/21	Warning	Firmware version does not match driver version.	The firmware version and driver must match. This is a warning message, but it is recommended that you reinstall matching versions of the firmware and driver.

Table A-13 NIC Event Log Entries (Continued)

Message ID Hexadecimal/ Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x0014/20	Error	Failed to read registry configuration.	The registry is corrupted. Reinstall the driver and/or operating system.
0x0013/19	Error	Resource conflict.	The operating system failed to allocate resources for the device. Check low memory conditions and operating system hardware resource conflicts.
0x0012/18	Error	Failed to enable bus mastering.	Verify that the BIOS allows bus mastering and that no resource conflicts exist.
0x0011/17	Error	The driver is incompatible with the device.	The driver is loaded on the incorrect hardware device. Verify that the correct driver is installed.
0x0010/16	Warning	The network driver was reset.	This may indicate a system hang or hardware issue. Verify other system devices are working properly.
0x000c/12	Informational	The Ethernet link is down.	This message is informational.
0x000b/11	Informational	The Ethernet link is up.	This message is informational.
0x000a/10	Error	The network device detected an error.	A hardware error occurred. Verify that the firmware flash image is not corrupted. Contact Emulex Technical Support.
0x0009/9	Error	Failed to register interrupt service routine.	This is an NDIS error. Verify that hardware resource conflicts do not exist.
0x0008/8	Error	Failed to get TCP offload handlers.	This is an NDIS error. Verify the NDIS version is valid for the driver.
0x0007/7	Warning	A memory allocation failure occurred during driver load. Performance may be reduced.	This warning occurred due to a failed memory allocation. Check low memory conditions. Use a smaller MTU or disable TCP offload to reduce driver memory requirements.
0x0006/6	Error	Driver load failed due to memory allocation failure	This failure occurred due to a failed memory allocation in the driver. Check low memory conditions.
0x0005/5	Error	Failed to register scatter gather DMA.	This failure occurred due to a failed memory allocation in the operating system. Check low memory conditions.
0x0004/4	Error	Failed to map device registers.	This failure occurred due to a failed memory allocation in the operating system. Check low memory conditions.

Table A-13 NIC Event Log Entries (Continued)

Message ID Hexadecimal/ Decimal	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x0003/3	Error	Unsupported medium.	This is an internal NDIS error. Check the operating system installation.
0x0002/2	Error	The network driver initialization failed.	This may be a firmware driver mismatch or corrupt installation. Check the firmware version, reinstall the firmware and try again. This may also indicate a hardware issue.
0x0001/1	Informational	The driver successfully loaded.	This message is informational and indicates successful loading of the device driver.

 Table A-13
 NIC Event Log Entries (Continued)

iSCSI Error and Event Log

Viewing the iSCSI Error and Event Log on Windows Server 2008

The iSCSI driver generates error codes in the system event log in the form of Event ID 11 errors. These error codes can be viewed by using the Event Viewer application.

To view the error codes:

- 1. Click the **Start** tab on the bottom of the screen.
- 2. Click **Run**.
- 3. Type **eventvwr** and click **OK**.
- 4. Click Windows Log.
- 5. Click **System**.
- 6. Click the be2iscsi error under System Events to show the details of the event.

The iSCSI driver logs errors with the port driver error code of SP_INTERNAL_ADAPTER_ERROR, which translates to an Event ID 11 entry in the system event log.

The following is an example of the iSCSI driver error code 0x11800003 viewed with the Event Viewer application. The window shows the driver generated error code in the fifth DWORD (offset 0x10) of the word dump.

Note: To improve the visibility of the error code in the Data field of the Event Properties window, select the Words option.

Computer Management									_ 6
	\$p								-18
→ 🗈 🔟 🗳 🔂 😼									
Computer Management (Local)	Туре	Date	Time	Source	Category	Event	User	Computer	
💑 System Tools	😳 Error	1/13/2009	11:39:44	be2iscsi	None	11	N/A	SERVEREN	
Event Vewer	SError	1/13/2009	11:39:23	be2net	None	34	N/A	SERVEREN	
Application	Information	1/13/2009	11:39:23	be2net	None	1	N/A	SERVEREN	
Security	🔥 Warning	1/13/2009	11:39:23	be2net	None	30	N/A	SERVEREN	
[j] System	Error	1/13/2009	11:39:23	be2net	None	34	N/A	SERVEREN	
Shared Folders Shared Folders Local Users and Groups	6			U.C. Statistics	? ×	11	N/A	SERVEREN+	
	Event Prope	rties	6 - WILLSE (*)	1997 - ASI 2.	<u> </u>	13	N/A	SERVEREN+	
Gevice Manager	Event					34	N/A	SERVEREN+	
Storage	€				1	34	N/A	SERVEREN	
	Ogte:	1/13/2009	Source: be2isc	si	+	7036	N/A	SERVEREN+	
- Disk.Defragmenter	I Time:	11:39.44 AM	Categogy: None			7035	SYSTEM	SERVEREN+	
Disk Management	Type:	Error 1	Event [D: 11		+	7036	N/A	SERVEREN+	
Services and Applications	User:	N/A			Ra	7035	SYSTEM	SERVEREN+	
	Computer	SERVEREN-P	754W			7036	N/A	SERVEREN+	
	Computer Descriptio					7035	SYSTEM	SERVEREN+	
	Q Descriptio	n				7036	N/A	SERVEREN+	
	C The drive	r detected a cor	ntroller error on \D	evice\RaidPort1.		7035	NETWORK SER	SERVEREN+	
	The drive For more Http://doc			e		7036	N/A	SERVEREN	
	G For more little / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /		Help and Support	Center at		4294	N/A	SERVEREN	
	9	a protocol a solution	and the second second			4295	N/A	SERVEREN	
	9					11	N/A	SERVEREN	
	0					15	N/A	SERVEREN	
	€					34	N/A	SERVEREN	
	ā I					1	N/A	SERVEREN	
	A					30	N/A	SERVEREN	
		Bytes C Wor				34	N/A	SERVEREN	
			01 00 6a 00	· · · · · · · ·	<u> </u>	13	N/A	SERVEREN	
			0b 00 04 c0	k		34	N/A	SERVEREN	
	9 10010: C	12 00 80 II	00 00 00 00	0	그	1	N/A	SERVEREN	
	À					30	N/A	SERVEREN	
	ē		OK.	Cancel	Apply	34	N/A	SERVEREN	
	7					13	N/A	SERVEREN	
	Error	1/13/2009	11:06:10	DCOM	None	10016	NETWORK SER		
	Error	1/13/2009	11:06:10	DCOM	None	10016	NETWORK SER	and the detailed the	
	Information	1/13/2009	11:06:08	AeLookup5vc	None	3	N/A	SERVEREN	
	Information	1/13/2009	11:06:04	DCOM	None	10026	N/A	SERVEREN	
D1	Information	1/13/2009	11:06:04	eventiog	None	6005	N/A	SERVEREN	

Figure A-2 iSCSI Error

Because the UCNAs are dual PCI-function adapters, the DeviceRaidPort < n > value changes depending on the device that observed the error.

iSCSI Error Log on Windows Server 2008

The following is a brief description of the error log codes generated by the iSCSI driver for Windows Server 2008. It includes the error code, the message displayed, and the meaning of the message with the recommended resolution.

Message ID	Message	Description/Recommended Resolution
0x348d0008	The iSCSI driver failed a WMI IOCTL request from the port driver because the request was failed by the ARM firmware. This error is immediately followed by another error code entry indicating the WMI request code in error.	This failure indicates that an operation attempted from the Microsoft WMI application resulted in an error. Check the operation being attempted for user or configuration errors.
0x348d0007	The iSCSI driver failed a WMI IOCTL request from the port driver. This error is immediately followed by another error code entry indicating the WMI request code in error.	This failure indicates that an operation attempted from the Microsoft WMI application resulted in an error. Check the operation being attempted for user or configuration errors.

Table A-14 iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows Server 2008

Message ID	Message	Description/Recommended Resolution
0x33900002	The iSCSI driver failed an I/O request because it failed to retrieve a scatter gather list from the Storport driver.	This failure occurred due to a failed memory allocation in the operating system. Check low memory conditions.
0x31880001	The iSCSI driver failed to load because initialization failed during a power management bootup.	This failure may be due to the firmware not being present or currently running. This failure may also indicate a hardware issue.
0x3184000c	The iSCSI driver was unable to map one or more PCI Base Address Registers and failed to load.	This failure may indicate a low memory condition or a hardware error.
0x3184000b	The iSCSI driver ignored a configuration entry because the entry was invalid.	The invalid entry must be removed or corrected. Check the registry configuration for any new valid values added to the driver parameters. For more information on valid driver values, see Table 3-12, iSCSI Driver Options, on page 117.
0x31840009	The iSCSI driver failed to load a configuration value specified in the registry because the value was out of range. The driver will use the default value for this configuration parameter instead.	The range specified for a configuration parameter is too large or too small and must be corrected. Check the registry configuration for any new valid values added to the driver parameters. For more information on valid driver values, see Table 3-12, iSCSI Driver Options, on page 117.
0x31840006	The iSCSI driver failed to load due to memory allocation failure.	This failure occurred due to a failed memory allocation in the driver. Check low memory conditions.
0x31840001	The iSCSI driver failed to load because initialization failed during normal bootup.	This failure may be due to the firmware not being present or currently running. This failure may also indicate a hardware issue.
0x31640004	An internal API failed in the iSCSI driver during initialization.	This failure may indicate a low memory condition.
0x3164000D	The driver failed to allocate its complete memory requirement and will attempt to load with reduced capabilities. Total number of targets available will be reduced.	This message indicates a low memory condition.
0x14831000	There was an Unrecoverable Error detected by the iSCSI driver. Following this error log entry, the next 3 entries indicate the error codes.	This may be due to hardware errors or due to unhandled exceptions in the hardware or firmware.
0x138e0103	The iSCSI driver failed an IOCTL request because the number of scatter gather elements required for the IOCTL buffer exceeded the firmware limit. Following this error log entry, the next entry will indicate the IOCTL opcode and the payload length requested.	This error may indicate an incorrect configuration option for the iSCSI driver. It may also indicate a low memory condition.

Table A-14 iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows Server 2008 (Continued)

Message ID	Message	Description/Recommended Resolution
0x138d0101	The iSCSI driver detected an error offloading the iSCSI connection. The operation will be retried again. Following this error log entry, the next entry will indicate the session handle and the firmware error code.	This may indicate a target is in error or may point to transient network connectivity issues. It may also indicate a firmware error.
0x12990013	The iscsi driver did not receive an iSCSI command window update within 25 seconds during I/O operations. Following this error log entry, the next entry will indicate the session handle where this error occurred. The iSCSI driver will trigger a session recovery on the session and continue.	 Verify that the iSCSI target is certified by Microsoft. Check for errors reported at the target. The Emulex iSCSI UCNA is only supported with certified targets. Check for software updates at the target vendor's website. If applicable, update the software. Check for software updates at the Emulex website. If applicable, update the software.
0x127b0012	The iSCSI driver received an invalid iSCSI Command Sequence Number update from the target. Following this error log entry, the next three entries will indicate the session handle and the iSCSI parameters - MaxCmdSN and ExpCmdSN respectively.	 Verify that the iSCSI target is certified by Microsoft. Check for errors reported at the target. The Emulex iSCSI UCNA is only supported with certified targets. Check for software updates at the target vendor's website. If applicable, update the software. Check for software updates at the Emulex website. If applicable, update the software.
0x12790006	A connection to the target was lost for a period exceeding the ETO. The error log entry immediately following this entry will indicate the session ID of the target that lost the connection. There will be event log entries from the disk subsystem indicating that the drives were lost. If any I/Os were in progress, the system may see I/O errors or failures.	Check the connection to the target or the state of the target device. If the target is made available, any sessions that existed previously are reestablished and the devices are available for I/O.
0x11990007	The iSCSI driver received a TMF that is not supported and rejected this request. The error log entry immediately following this entry will indicate the TMF function code that was rejected.	The operating system version is not supported.
0x11940008	The iSCSI driver received a TMF Abort request for an I/O request that is not present with the driver.	This may indicate a slow connection to the target. Check network connectivity to the target for any errors.
0x1184000B	Firmware returned invalid data in its configuration. iSCSI login and offload are disabled.	Reload the firmware.

Table A-14 iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows Server 2008 (Continued)

Message ID	Message	Description/Recommended Resolution
0x11840002	The iSCSI driver encountered a mismatched version of the firmware running on the board. This error may be followed by error codes 0x31840001 or 0x31880001 indicating that the iSCSI driver failed to load.	This failure indicates that the driver version that is running on the system does not match the version of the firmware on the board. Correct this by running the installer from the desired version.
0x11840001	The iSCSI driver detected a failure in the hardware during initialization. This error may be followed by error codes 0x31840001 or 0x31880001 indicating that the iSCSI driver failed to load.	This failure indicates that the hardware has not been initialized or is malfunctioning. This may also indicate that the firmware is not running correctly.
0x11800005	Both Port 0 and Port 1 links were down for a period exceeding the LDTO. If the UCNA has connection to the target, there will be event log entries from the disk subsystem indicating that the drives were lost. If any I/Os were in progress, the system may see I/O errors or failures.	Check the links to the UCNA. If the link is reestablished, any sessions that previously existed are reestablished and the devices is available for I/O.
0x11800003	Both Port 0 and Port 1 links are down.	Check the links to the UCNA.
0x31840005	Driver load failed because the PCI Vendor ID and Device ID are not supported.	Check the configuration on the UCNA.
0x1180000A	The logical link on the OneConnect Port is down, traffic is disallowed on this function.	The iSCSI function may have been disabled in the PXESelect application. If you disabled it intentionally, you can ignore this message.

Table A-14 iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows Server 2008 (Continued)

Viewing the iSCSI Error Log on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Window Server 2012 R2

The iSCSI driver on the Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2 operating systems support the new event logging mechanism introduced by Storport. Custom event messages are logged for a variety of events with different severity, such as informational, warning or error. The source of the events indicates the service name and every event includes a unique ID and a symbolic name.

Table A-15iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, WindowsServer 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x02	Info	Driver loaded successfully.	N/A

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x04	Error	Firmware version does not match with driver version.	The driver version that is running on the system does not match the version of the firmware on the UCNA. Install a driver that is compatible with the firmware.
0x05	Warning	Port link is down, check connection to UCNA.	Check the links to the UCNA.
0x06	Info	Port link is up.	N/A
0x07	Error	Link down timeout expired on the port, all targets are lost.	The link on the UCNA is down for a period exceeding the LDTO value. If the UCNA has a connection to the target, event log entries from the disk subsystem indicate that the drives were lost. If any I/O was in progress, the system may see I/O errors or failures.
			Check the links to the UCNA. If the link is reestablished, any sessions that previously existed are reestablished and the devices are available for I/O.
0x08	Error	Target with session id N failed to connect within the configured timeout.	A connection to the target was lost for a period exceeding the ETO. The error log entry includes the session ID of the target that lost the connection. Event log entries from the disk subsystem indicate that the drives were lost. If any I/O was in progress, the system may see I/O errors or failures.
			Check the connection to the target or the state of the target device. If the target is made available, any sessions that previously existed are reestablished and the devices are available for I/O.
0x09	Error	Task Management request N was unhandled.	The iSCSI driver received a Task Management Function that is not supported, and it rejected this request.
			An application or service that is installed on the system may not be compatible with the driver.
0x0a	Error	Task Management Function abort was received on a task that is not present.	The iSCSI driver received a Task Management Function Abort request for an I/O request that is not present with the driver.
			This may indicate a slow connection to the target. Check network connectivity to the target for any errors.
0x0b	Error	Error in determining firmware configuration.	An error in determining the firmware configuration occurred. The firmware on the UCNA may not be functioning properly. Check the UCNA and reinstall the firmware if required.

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x0e	Warning	iSCSI error was detected on session A, ExpCmdSn B, MaxCmdSn C.	 The iSCSI driver received an invalid iSCSI Command Sequence Number update from the target. The event log entry indicates the session handle, MaxCmdSN, and ExpCmdSN. Verify that the iSCSI target is certified by Microsoft. Check for errors reported at the target. The Emulex iSCSI UCNA is only supported with certified targets. Check for software updates at the target vendor's website. If applicable, update the software. Check for driver and firmware updates at the Emulex website. If applicable, update the driver and firmware.
0x0f	Warning	The iSCSI target on session id N failed to open the command window within configured timeout.	 The iSCSI driver did not receive an iSCSI command window update for up to 25 seconds during I/O operations. The event log entry indicates the session handle on which the error occurred. The iSCSI driver triggers a session recovery on the session and continues. Verify that the iSCSI target is certified by Microsoft. Check for errors reported at the target. The Emulex iSCSI UCNA is only supported with certified targets. Check for software updates at the target vendor's website. If applicable, update the software. Check for driver and firmware updates at the Emulex website. If applicable, update the driver and firmware.
0x10	Warning	Encountered an error offloading an iSCSI connection, error code N.	The iSCSI driver detected an error while offloading the iSCSI connection. The operation is retried up to five times. The session handle and the UCNA firmware error code are included in the event log message. This may indicate a target is in error or it may point to transient network connectivity issues. It may also indicate a UCNA firmware error.
0x11	Warning	The IOCTL opcode A requires more scatter gather elements than allowed. Transfer length is B.	The iSCSI driver failed an IOCTL request because the number of scatter/gather elements required for the IOCTL buffer exceeded the UCNA firmware limit. The IOCTL opcode and the payload length requested are included in the event log entry. This error may indicate an incorrect configuration option for the iSCSI driver. It may also indicate a low memory condition.

Message ID	e ID Severity Message F		Recommended Resolution		
0x12	Error	Unrecoverable error detected. UE Low: A UE High: B FW Line: C.	An unrecoverable error was detected by the iSCSI driver. This may be caused by hardware errors or by unhandled exceptions in the hardware or firmware.		
0x13	Error	Hardware initialization failed, failing driver load	The iSCSI driver detected a failure in the hardware during initialization. This failure indicates that the hardware has not been initialized or is malfunctioning. This may also indicate that the firmware is not running correctly.		
0x14	Warning	Failed to retrieve scatter gather list for an SRB, an IO has failed.	The iSCSI driver failed an I/O request because it failed to retrieve a scatter/gather list from the Storport driver. This failure occurred because of a failed memory allocation in the operating system. Check low memory conditions.		
0x15	Error	ACIT library table initialization failed.	An internal API failed in the iSCSI driver during initialization. This failure may indicate a low memory condition.		
0x16	Error	An ACIT API failed.	An internal API failed in the iSCSI driver during initialization. This failure may indicate a low memory condition.		
0x17	Error	Unsupported hardware, failing driver load.	Driver loading failed because the PCI Vendor ID and Device ID are not supported. Check the UCNA configuration.		
0x18	Error	Memory could not be allocated, failing driver load.	This failure occurred because of a failed memory allocation in the driver. This failure may indicate a low memory condition		
0x19	Warning	WMI driver error, code A.	The iSCSI driver failed a WMI IOCTL request from the port driver. The event log entry includes the WMI request code in error. An operation attempted from the Microsoft WMI application resulted in an error. Check the operation being attempted for errors.		
0x1a	Warning	WMI IOCTL error, code A.	The iSCSI driver failed a WMI IOCTL request from the port driver because the request was failed by the ARM firmware. The event log entry includes the request code in error. An operation attempted from the Microsoft WMI application resulted in an error. Check the		

Table A-15 iSCSI Error Log Entries on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Window	S
Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2 (Continued)	

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x1b	Warning	A configuration parameter is out of range.	The iSCSI driver failed to load a configuration value specified in the registry because the value was out of range. The driver uses the default value for this configuration parameter.
			The range specified for a configuration parameter is either too large or too small, and it must be corrected. Check the registry configuration for new driver parameter entries. See Table 3-12, iSCSI Driver Options, on page 117 for the correct range of values
0x1d	Warning	A configuration parameter is invalid.	The iSCSI driver ignored a configuration entry because the entry was invalid.
		invanu.	Check the registry configuration for new driver parameter entries. The invalid entry must be removed or corrected.
			See Table 3-12, iSCSI Driver Options, on page 117 for the correct range of values.
0x1e	Error	Failed to map Base Address Register, failing driver load.	The iSCSI driver was unable to load because it was unable to map one or more PCI Base Address registers.
			This failure may indicate a low memory condition or a hardware error.
0x1f	Error	Hardware initialization has failed - error code A.	The hardware initialization has failed. This error causes the driver load to fail. The error code included in the event log entry identifies the specific point of failure.
			This failure indicates that the hardware has not been initialized or is malfunctioning. This may also indicate that the firmware is not running correctly.
0x20	Warning	Initial memory allocation failed, driver is running with reduced capabilities.	The driver failed to allocate its complete memory requirement and attempts to load with reduced capabilities. The total number of targets available is reduced.
			This message indicates a low memory condition.
0x21	Info	Target Reconnected for Session id N.	N/A
0x22	Info	Interrupt Redirection capability is enabled.	N/A
0x23	Warning	Interrupt Redirection capability is not supported by this firmware. Update your firmware.	Update the firmware to the latest version.

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution	
0x24	Error	Device is not supported on Windows 7 Operating System, failing driver load.	The iSCSI adapter family is not supported on the Windows 7 client operating systems.	
0x25	Info	Interrupt Redirection capability is not supported by this hardware.	N/A	
0x26	Warning	Logical link on the OneConnect Port is down, traffic is disallowed on this function.	The iSCSI function may have been disabled in the PXESelect application. If you disabled it intentionally, you can ignore this message.	
0x27	Error	Firmware returned invalid data in its configuration. iSCSI login and offload are disabled.	Reload the firmware.	
0x28	Warning	Error Recovery is not being attempted. Adapter is no longer functional.	A UE has occurred, but UE recovery is not enabled. A system reboot is required to make the adapter operational again.	
0x2b	Informational	The storage device is operating in Gen <xx> mode and installed in a <yy>x PCle slot.</yy></xx>	The adapter is no longer functional. A syste	
0x2c	Error	The firmware appears unresponsive; Unrecoverable Error.	The adapter is no longer functional. A system reboot is required to make the adapter operational again.	
0x2d	Informational	Reporting X of the total Y sessions logged in by firmware.	Informational event to indicate that not all targets logged in by the firmware were reported as available to the operating system. If the total number of targets logged by the firmware is over the specified limits, this error can be ignored.	
0x2f	Warning	Solicited command was invalidated internally due to a Data Digest error.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.	
0x30	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally; the received PDU size was greater than the DSL.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.	
0x31	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally; the received PDU sequence size was greater than the FBL/MBL.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.	
0x32	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally; a received PDU HDR had AHS.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.	
0x33	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to a Header Digest warning.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.	

Message ID Severity		Message	Recommended Resolution		
0x34	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to a bad opcode in the PDU header.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x35	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to a received ITT/TTT that did not belong to this connection.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x36	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally; the received ITT/TTT value was greater than the maximum supported ITTs/TTTs.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x37	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to an incoming TCP RST.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x38	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to TCP protocol warning (SYN received, maximum retransmits exceeded, urgent received, etc.).	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x39	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to TCP RST sent by the transmit side.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x3a	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to an incoming TCP FIN.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check the iSCSI configuration.		
0x3b	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to a bad unsolicited PDU (unsolicited PDUs are PDUs with ITT=0xffffffff).	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.		
0x3c	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to a bad WRB index.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.		
0x3d	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; the received command had residual overrun bytes.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.		
0x3e	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; the received command had residual underrun bytes.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.		

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x3f	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; a received PDU had an invalid StatusSN.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x40	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; a received R2T had invalid field(s).	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x41	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; the received PDU had an invalid LUN.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x42	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; the corresponding ICD was not in a valid state.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x43	Warning	Command was invalidated; the received PDU had an invalid ITT.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x44	Warning	Command was invalidated; the received sequence buffer offset was out of order.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x45	Warning	Command was invalidated internally; a received PDU had an invalid DataSN.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x46	Warning	Connection invalidation completion notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x47	Warning	Connection invalidation completion with data PDU index.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x48	Warning	Command invalidation completion notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x49	Warning	Unsolicited header notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x4a	Warning	Unsolicited data notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x4b	Warning	Unsolicited data digest warning notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x4c	Warning	TCP acknowledge based notification.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.

Message ID	Severity	Message	Recommended Resolution
0x4d	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally; the command and data were not on the same connection.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x4e	Warning	Solicited command was invalidated internally due to DIF warning.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.
0x4f	Warning	Connection was invalidated internally due to an incoming unsolicited PDU that had immediate data on the connection that does not support it.	This condition is detected by the OneConnect firmware. If this message is unexpected, please check your iSCSI configuration.

Appendix B. Configuring iSCSI through DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Recommendations

If you are using the DHCP server to obtain an IP address for the UCNA, Emulex recommends that you set up a reservation. A reservation assigns a specific IP address based on the MAC address of the UCNA. If you do not reserve an IP Address through DHCP, then you must set the lease length for the UCNA IP address to unlimited. This prevents the IP address lease from expiring.

Vendor-Specific Option 43

This section describes the format for the data returned in DHCP vendor-specific option 43. The method and format for specifying the Vendor ID is outside the scope of this document and is not included here. The UCNA offers this Vendor ID to the DHCP server to retrieve data in the format described in this section.

Format of Vendor-Specific Option 43

The following describes the format of option 43 and includes guidelines for creating the data string:

```
'iscsi:'<TargetIP>':'<TargetTCPPort>':'<LUN>':'<TargetName>':'
<InitiatorName>':'<HeaderDigest>':'<DataDigest>':'
<AuthenticationType>
```

- Strings shown in quotes are part of the syntax and is therefore mandatory
- Fields enclosed in angular brackets (including the angular brackets) should be replaced with their corresponding values. Some of these fields are optional and may be skipped.
- If an optional field is skipped, a colon must be used as a placeholder to indicate the default value for that field.
- When specified, the value of each parameter should be enclosed in double quotes. See "Examples" on page 178.
- All options are case sensitive.

Description of Mandatory and Optional Parameters

Table B-1 describes the parameters used in the data string for option 43.

Table B-1 Data String Parameters for Option 43	Table B-1	Data	String	Parameters	for	Option	43
--	-----------	------	--------	------------	-----	--------	----

Parameter	Description	Field Type
<targetip></targetip>	A valid IPv4 address in dotted decimal notation	Mandatory
<targettcpport></targettcpport>	A decimal number ranging from 1 to 65535 (inclusive). The default TCP port is 3260.	Optional
<lun></lun>	A hexadecimal representation of the LUN of the boot device. By default, LUN 0 is assumed to be the boot LUN. It is an eight-byte number which should be specified as a hexadecimal number consisting of 16 digits, with an appropriate number of zeroes padded to the left, if required.	Optional
<targetname></targetname>	A valid iSCSI name of up to 223 characters.	
<initiatorname></initiatorname>	A valid iSCSI iqn name of up to 223 characters. If it is not provided, the default initiator name (generated by the UCNA based on its MAC address) is used.	Optional
<headerdigest> Either E (the header digest is enabled) or D (the header digest is disabled).</headerdigest>		Optional
<datadigest> Either E (the data digest is enabled) or D (the data digest is disabled).</datadigest>		Optional
<authenticationtype></authenticationtype>	D (authentication is disabled), E (one-way CHAP is enabled; the user name and secret must be specified by non-DHCP means), or M (mutual-CHAP is enabled; the user name and passwords must be specified by non-DHCP means). D is the default setting.	Optional

Examples

The following is an example of default initiator name and data digest settings:

```
iscsi:"192.168.0.2":"3261":"00000000000000E":"iqn.2009-4.com:12345
67890"::"E"::"E"
```

- Target IP address: 192.168.0.2
- Target TCP port: 3261
- Target boot LUN: 0x0E
- Target iqn name: iqn.2009-04.com:1234567890
- Initiator name: Not specified. Use the initiator name that is already configured, or use the default name if no initiator name is already configured.
- Header digest: Enabled
- Data digest: Not specified; assume disabled.
- Authentication type: One-way CHAP.

The following is an example of default TCP port and mutual-CHAP settings:

```
iscsi:"192.168.0.2"::"00000000000000E":"iqn.2009-4.com:1234567890"
::"E":"D":"M"
```

- Target IP address: 192.168.0.2
- Target TCP port: Use default from RFC 3720 (3260)
- Target boot LUN: 0x0E
- Target iqn name: iqn.2009-04.com:1234567890
- Initiator name: Not specified. Use the initiator name that is already configured, or use the default name if no initiator name is already configured.
- Header digest: Enabled
- Data digest: Disabled
- Authentication type: Mutual-CHAP

Appendix C. Port Speed Specifications

A UCNA can support only one Ethernet port speed at a time, and the preference is always for 10 Gb/s. The type of module used (copper or optical) does not make a difference. As soon as a 10-Gb module is plugged into one of the ports, the UCNA switches to a 10-Gb speed no matter what speed the other port is running, or even if I/O is running on that port. This behavior is a per-UCNA constraint; another UCNA can be running on a different speed.

Table C-1 lists negotiated speed specifications per an adapter's port connection:.

Port 0	Port 1	Port Link	Status Speed
10 Gb/s	10 Gb/s	Both ports link up	10 Gb/s
10 Gb/s	1Gb/s	Only Port 0 links up	10 Gb/s
1Gb/s	10 Gb/s	Only Port 1 links up	10 Gb/s
1Gb/s	1Gb/s	Both ports link up	1 Gb/s
1Gb/s	-	Only Port 0 links up	1 Gb/s
-	1Gb/s	Only Port 1 links up	1 Gb/s
10 Gb/s	-	Only Port 0 links up	10 Gb/s
-	10 Gb/s	Only Port 1 links up	10 Gb/s

Table C-1 Negotiated Speed Specification per Adapter Port Connection

Negotiating Speed on a Mezzanine Card

A mezzanine card retains the first negotiated speed. This could be either 10 Gb/s or 1 Gb/s, depending on the switch connected. To change the speed on a mezzanine card:

- 1. Remove the switch from both the ports.
- 2. Insert the switch on one port and wait for the link to come up.
- 3. After the link is up, insert the switch on the other port.

The mezzanine card retains the speed of the first link until both links are down.

Appendix D. AutoPilot Installer Command Line and Configuration File Parameters

The AutoPilot Installer can initiate an installation from a command prompt or script. AutoPilot Installer can be run manually from the command line or a script, or it can be run automatically by the driver kit. When run manually from the command line or script, the command line parameters may be passed.

If you specify the "/q" switch with the driver kit installer command, the driver kit installer runs in unattended mode and automatically invokes the APInstall.exe with its "/silent" switch. See "Unattended Driver Installation" on page 24 for more information.

AParg Driver Kit Parameter and Appending to the APInstall.exe File

If you specify a value for the "APargs" driver kit parameter, this value is appended to the APInstall.exe command line. For example, if you execute this installer file as:

elxdrv-fc-fcoe<version>.exe /q APargs=SilentRebootEnable=True

then after installing the AutoPilot Installer, the driver kit automatically executes it as:

APInstall.exe /silent SilentRebootEnable=True

To specify more than one parameter, separate the settings by one or more spaces and put quotes around the entire APargs expression. For example, the command line (all on one line):

```
elxdrv-fc-fcoe<version>.exe "APargs=SilentRebootEnable=True
localDriverLocation = "d:\drivers\new\Storport"
```

results in the AutoPilot Installer being run as:

```
APInstall.exe SilentRebootEnable=True localDriverLocation =
"d:\drivers\new\Storport"
```

Parameter values that contain spaces, such as path names, must be enclosed in quotes. To add such a setting to APargs, you must insert backslashes before the quotes around the value, and then add quotes around the entire APargs expression. For example, the command line (all on one line):

```
elxdrv-fc-fcoe<version>.exe "APargs=ReportLocation=\"C:\Documents
and Settings\Administrator\My Documents\reports\""
```

results in AutoPilot Installer being run as:

```
APInstall.exe ReportLocation="C:\Documents and
Settings\Administrator\My Documents\reports"
```

If you have many parameters to pass to the AutoPilot Installer, or if you want to do so repeatedly, then it may be less error prone to run the utility kit installer interactively, delay AutoPilot Installer execution, and then run the AutoPilot Installer command yourself. The procedure for doing so is described in "Option 2: Run the AutoPilot Installer Separately" on page 22 and "Unattended Driver Installation" on page 24.

You can specify a non-default directory for the driver kit by specifying an 'installation folder' on the command line. For example:

```
elxdrv-fc-fcoe<version>.exe install:"C:\Emulex"
```

This option can be used in conjunction with the "APArgs" directive.

AutoPilot Installer Syntax

The syntax used to run AutoPilot Installer silently from a command line or script is:

APInstall [/silent] [parameter setting] [parameter setting...]

The "silent" switch and parameter settings can occur in any order. One or more spaces must separate the switch and each parameter setting.

The syntax of a parameter setting is:

```
parameter name =["]value["]
```

Double quotes are required only around values that contain spaces. Spaces may separate parameters, equal signs and values. Parameter names and values are not case-sensitive.

The APInstall command may contain the settings listed below. Each setting, except ConfigFileLocation, may also be specified in the AutoPilot Configuration file. For descriptions of each parameter, see "Software Configuration Parameters" on page 183.

Settings specified in the APInstall command override those specified in the configuration file.

```
ConfigFileLocation = path-specifier
NoSoftwareFirstInstalls = { TRUE | FALSE }
SilentRebootEnable = { TRUE | FALSE }
ForceDriverUpdate = { TRUE | FALSE }
ForceDriverTypeChange = { TRUE | FALSE }
SkipDriverInstall = { TRUE | FALSE }
InstallWithoutQFE = { TRUE | FALSE }
ForceRegUpdate = { TRUE | FALSE }
LocalDriverLocation = path-specifier
ReportLocation = path-specifier
```

Path Specifiers

Paths may be specified as

an explicit path:
 ReportLocation="C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot

```
Installer\Reports"
```

• a relative path:

```
LocalDriverLocation="Drivers\Storport Miniport\"
```

(assuming installation into "C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\", this path would logically become "C:\Program Files\Emulex\AutoPilot Installer\Drivers\Storport Miniport\")

• with the %ProgramFiles% environment variable:

```
LocalDriverLocation = "%ProgramFiles%\Emulex\AutoPilot
Installer\Driver"
```

Configuration File Location

The optional setting ConfigFileLocation contains the path to the configuration file that should be used. If this parameter is not specified, AutoPilot Installer uses the file named APInstall.cfg in the same folder as APInstall.exe.

The format is the same as that of the other path settings.

Example:

```
APInstall /silent SkipDriverInstall=True configFileLocation=MyConfiguration.cfg
```

Software Configuration Parameters

DiagEnable (Running Diagnostics)

Note: The DiagEnable parameter cannot be specified on the command line; it must be specified within the configuration file

Default: True

By default, AutoPilot Installer runs its diagnostics after all driver installation tasks have been completed. To disable this function, set this parameter to false.

ForceDriverTypeChange (Forcing a Driver Type Change)

Default: False

When installing a driver, set this parameter to true to cause silent mode installations to update or install the Storport Miniport driver on each adapter in the system, without regard for the currently installed driver type (replacing any installation of the SCSIport Miniport or FC Port driver).

ForceDriverUpdate (Forcing a Driver Version Update)

Default: False

By default, if the same version of the driver is already installed, an unattended installation proceeds with installing only the utilities. To force a driver update even if the same version of the driver is installed, set this parameter to true.

Note: ForceDriverUpdate applies to unattended installations only; in interactive installations this parameter is ignored. Instead you are asked if the driver should be updated.

ForceRegUpdate (Forcing an Update of an Existing Driver Parameter Value)

Default: False

The ForceRegUpdate driver parameter setting determines whether existing driver parameters are retained or changed when you update the driver. By default, all existing driver parameter settings are retained. The ForceRegUpdate parameter does not affect any existing persistent bindings. To set up an installation to remove the existing driver parameters from the registry and replace them with parameters specified in the AutoPilot Configuration file, set this parameter to true.

Note: You can use this setting for attended installations with the AutoPilot Installer wizard if you modify the AutoPilot Configuration file in an AutoPilot Installer Kit.

LocalDriverLocation (Specifying Location to Search for Drivers)

Default: Drivers (The default "Drivers" folder is located in the same folder as AutoPilot Installer.)

You can specify a local location that is to be searched for drivers during unattended installations. The location may be a local hard drive or a network share. Removable media are not searched.

Example:

LocalDriverLocation = "d:\drivers\new\Storport"

Note: On x64 and 32-bit systems, the path specified by 'LocalDriverLocation' must contain at least one instance of an FC, FCoE, iSCSI, and NIC driver. AutoPilot Installer automatically selects the most recent revisions that it finds.

NoSoftwareFirstInstalls (Prohibiting Software First Installations)

Default: False

When this parameter is set to true, AutoPilot Installer prevents unattended installations from performing software-first installations. This way you can execute an automated installation on multiple machines in your network, but only machines with Emulex adapters actually have Emulex drivers updated or installed.

If this parameter is omitted from the configuration file or explicitly set to true, the page is not displayed. AutoPilot Installer uses configuration file parameters to determine the appropriate management mode.

ReportLocation (Setting Up an Installation Report Title and Location)

The automatically generated file name for this report is

```
"report_mm-dd-yy.txt"
```

where 'mm' is the month number, 'dd' is the day, and 'yy' indicates the year.

You can change only the installation report folder; the file name is auto-generated. In the following example x could be any available drive:

ReportLocation = "x:\autopilot\reports\installs\"

SilentInstallEnable (Enabling Unattended Installation)

Note: Setting the SilentInstallEnable parameter to true in the configuration file is functionally equivalent to supplying the "/silent" switch on the command line. You cannot specify the SilentInstallEnable parameter on the command line.

Default: False

Setting this parameter to true causes AutoPilot Installer to operate with no user interaction.

SilentRebootEnable (Enabling Silent Reboot)

Default: False

AutoPilot Installer's default behavior in unattended installations is not to restart the system. AutoPilot Installer continues with the installation. Restarts often require you to log in as part of the Windows start up process. If there is no login, the installation process would hang if the system is restarted. However, Windows can be configured to start up without requiring you to log in. You must make sure it is safe to restart the system during unattended installations if you are going to set this parameter to true.

InstallWithoutQFE (Enabling Installation if a QFE Check Fails)

Default: False

AutoPilot Installer checks for Microsoft's QFEs, also known as KB (Knowledge Base) updates, based on the checks you have specified in the [STORPORT.QFES] section. By default, the installation terminates if the QFE check fails. To enable a driver installation to proceed even if a check for QFEs fails, set this parameter to true.

AutoPilot Configuration File

The AutoPilot configuration file is organized into sections, grouped according to related commands. There are six main sections.

- [AUTOPILOT.ID] Configuration Identification
- [AUTOPILOT.CONFIG] Software Configuration
- [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION] Configuration Prompts/Vendor-Specific Questions
- [STORPORT.QFES] QFE Checks
- [STORPORT.PARAMS] Setting Up FC Driver Parameters
- [SYSTEM.PARAMS] Setting Up System Parameters

Each section begins with a heading. The heading is required even if there are no settings in the section. The only section not required is the Installation Prompts section, which has the heading [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION]. That section cannot exist if AutoPilot Installer runs in silent mode. You must delete or comment-out that entire section for unattended installation.

Lines that begin with a semicolon are comments. Some of the comments are sample settings. To use the setting, remove the semicolon.

Using the Windows Environment Variable (%ProgramFiles%)

You can use the Windows ProgramFiles environment variable in the LocalDriverLocation and ReportLocation strings within the configuration file. This allows you to specify strings in a driver-independent manner, allowing the same configuration file to be used on different systems where Windows may have been installed on different drives. To use this option, "%ProgramFiles%" must be the first component specified in the string. The portion of the string that follows is appended to the contents of the ProgramFiles environment variable. For example:

```
ReportLocation = "%ProgramFiles%\my company\reports"
```

Note: The contents of the ProgramFiles environment variable is not terminated with a slash, so you must provide one in the string. Windows environment variables are not case-sensitive.

Configuration Identification [AUTOPILOT.ID]

This section appears at the beginning of every AutoPilot configuration file and contains revision and label information. The revision entry identifies the file's version number and the date on which it was produced. The label entry is used to identify the configuration that the file supports. This section may appear only once in the APInstall.cfg file.

Software Configuration [AUTOPILOT.CONFIG]

This section can contain settings that control and configure AutoPilot Installer and the OneCommand Manager application operation. This section can appear only once in the AutoPilot configuration file. See "Software Configuration Parameters" on page 183 for information about settings that may be specified in this section.

Configuration Prompts/Vendor-Specific Questions [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION]

Note: You must remove or comment out the entire [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION] section for an unattended installation.

A [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION] section may exist in the AutoPilot configuration file. The first items in this section are the driver parameters to be used regardless of how the questions are answered. This is followed by a subsection that contains questions (these may be vendor-specific questions). A line containing '[QUESTIONS]' marks the start of the subsection, and the end of it is marked by a line containing '[ENDQUESTIONS]'. Within the question subsection there can be as many questions as needed. Each question uses the format:

```
question= "question?", "explanation", "answer0", "answer1",
"answer2",...., "answern"
```

Where:

- "question?" contains the text of the question to be asked.
- "explanation" contains brief text to help explain the question. The explanation appears below the question in a smaller font. If there is no explanatory text, empty quotes must be used in its place.
- "answer0" contains the 1st answer to be displayed in the drop down list.
- "answer1" contains the 2nd answer to be displayed in the drop down list.
- "answern" contains the nth answer to be displayed in the drop down list.

For each question there can be as many answers as needed. For each answer there must be a corresponding "answer =" section with its corresponding driver parameters listed beneath it. The answer uses the format:

```
answer = 0
DriverParameter="Param1=value; Param2=value;"
answer = 1
DriverParameter="Param1=value; Param2=value;"
....
answer = n
DriverParameter="Param1=value; Param2=value;"
```

Example of [STORPORT.CONFIGURATION] section:

[STORPORT.CONFIGURATION]

```
;The first section contains the driver parameters common to all
configurations, no matter what answers are given.
DriverParameter="EmulexOption=0;"
[QUESTIONS]
question = "What is your link speed?", "Note: select 'Auto-detect'
if you are unsure about the answer.", "4GB", "2GB", "1GB",
"Auto-detect"
ANSWER = 0
DriverParameter = "LinkSpeed=4;" ;4 GB
ANSWER = 1
DriverParameter = "LinkSpeed=2;" ;2 GB
ANSWER = 2
DriverParameter = "LinkSpeed=1;" ;1 GB
ANSWER = 3
DriverParameter = "LinkSpeed=0;" ;Auto-detect question = "Describe
the topology of your storage network.", "Note: Select 'Arbitrated
Loop' when directly connected to the array (no fibre switch). Select
'Point-to-Point' when connected to a SAN (fibre switch).",
"Arbitrated Loop", "Point-to-Point"
ANSWER = 0
DriverParameter = "Topology=2;"
ANSWER = 1
DriverParameter = "Topology=3;"
[ENDQUESTIONS]
[END.STORPORT.CONFIGURATION]
```

QFE Checks [STORPORT.QFES]

This section specifies an additional QFE check, also known as KB (Knowledge Base) updates, during installation. To add a Windows QFE check to the configuration file, edit the [STORPORT.QFES] section in the AutoPilot configuration file. You may place this section anywhere within the file as long as it is not contained within another section. This section contains a single line for each QFE that is to be checked. Up to 10 lines are checked, more than that may exist but they are ignored. All parameters in each line must be specified. These lines have the format:

```
qfe = "qfe name", "path and file name", "file version", "applicable
OS"
```

qfe nameThe name of the item being checked. For example, QFE 2846340.The name should facilitate searching Microsoft's website for any
required code updates.

path and file name	This string identifies the file to be checked and its location relative to the Windows home folder. In most cases, the file to check is the Microsoft Storport driver, for example, "\system32\drivers\storport.sys". This string is also used in dialogs and log file messages.
file version	This is the minimum version that the file to be checked must have for the QFE to be considered installed. It is specified as a text string using the same format as is used when displaying the files property sheet. For example, "5.2.1390.176".
applicable OS	This is used to determine if the QFE applies to the operating system platform present. The acceptable value is "Win2008".
For example	

For example:

```
[STORPORT.QFES]
qfe = "QFE 83896", "\system32\drivers\storport.sys",
"5.2.1390.176", "Win2008"
```

Setting Up FC Driver Parameters [STORPORT.PARAMS]

This section specifies driver parameters. Parameters are read exactly as they are entered and are written to the registry. To change driver parameters, modify this section of the AutoPilot configuration file. Locate the [STORPORT.PARAMS] section in the AutoPilot configuration file. This section follows Optional Configuration File Changes. Under the [STORPORT.PARAMS] heading, list the driver parameters and new values for the driver to use.

For example:

```
Driver Parameter = "LinkTimeout = 45"
```

See Table 3-1, Storport Miniport Driver Parameters, on page 35 for a listing of driver parameters, defaults and valid values.

Setting Up System Parameters [SYSTEM.PARAMS]

To change the system parameters, create a [SYSTEM.PARAMS] section in the APInstall.cfg file. Create this section under the Optional Configuration File Changes heading in the [AUTOPILOT.CONFIG] section.

For example, you can adjust the operating system's global disk timeout. The timeout is stored in the registry under the key HKML\CurrentControlSet\Services\disk and is specified with the following string:

TimeOutValue = 0x3C (where the number is the timeout value in seconds.)

AutoPilot Installer Exit Codes

AutoPilot Installer sets an exit code to indicate whether an installation was successful or an error occurred. These exit codes allow AutoPilot Installer to be used in scripts with error handling. In unattended installations, AutoPilot Installer sets the following exit codes:

Error Code	Hex	Description
0	0x00000000	No errors.
2399141889	0x8F000001	Unsupported operating system detected.
2399141890	0x8F000002	The AutoPilot Configuration file is not found.
2399141891	0x8F000003	Disabled adapters detected in the system.
2399141892	0x8F000004	The selected driver is 64-bit and this system is 32-bit.
2399141893	0x8F000005	The selected driver is 32-bit and this system is 64-bit.
2399141894	0x8F000006	Installation activity is pending. AutoPilot Installer cannot run until it is resolved.
2399141895	0x8F000007	(GUI Mode only) You cancelled execution because you did not wish to perform a software-first install.
2399141896	0x8F000008	No drivers found.
2399141897	0x8F000009	One or more adapters failed diagnostics.
2399141904	0x8F000010	(GUI Mode only) You chose to install drivers even though a recommended QFE or Service Pack was not installed.
2399141920	0x8F000020	(GUI Mode only) You chose to stop installation because a recommended QFE or Service Pack was not installed.
2399141899	0x8F00000B	Unattended installation did not find any drivers of the type specified in the config file.
2399141900	0x8F00000C	A silent reboot was attempted, but according to the operating system a reboot is not possible.
2399141901	0x8F00000D	(GUI Mode only) A driver package download was cancelled.
2399141902	0x8F00000E	(Non-Enterprise) No adapters were found in the system.
2399141903	0x8F00000F	A required QFE or Service Pack was not detected on the system.
2399141836	0x8F000030	AutoPilot Installer was not invoked from an account with Administrator-level privileges.
2391419952	0x8F000040	AutoPilot Installer has detected unsupported adapters on the system.
2399141968	0x8F000050	Unattended software-first installations are disallowed.
2399141984	0x8F000060	You cancelled APInstall before any driver/utility installation occurred.
2399142000	0x8F000070	You cancelled APInstall after driver/utility installation occurred.

Table D-1 Unattended Installation Error Codes

Error Code	Hex	Description
2399142032	0x8F000090	APInstaller encountered an error while parsing the command line (Report file contains details).

Table D-1 Unattended Installation Error Codes (Continued)

AutoPilot Installer Installation Reports

During each installation, AutoPilot Installer produces a report describing events that occurred during the installation. This report has several sections.

- The first section provides basic information including the time and date of the installation, the name of the machine that the installation was performed on, the version number of AutoPilot Installer, and the identification of the configuration file that was used.
- The second section provides an inventory of the Emulex adapters as they were before AutoPilot Installer performed any actions.
- The third section lists the tasks that AutoPilot performs in the order they are done.
- The fourth section records the results of each task. When all driver installation tasks are completed, an updated adapter inventory is recorded.
- **Note:** If you cancel AutoPilot Installer, that fact is recorded along with when you cancelled the installation. The contents of any error dialogs that are displayed are also recorded.

Command Script Example

Modify the configuration file to script the installation of a system's driver. The following example command script (batch file) assumes that you have made mandatory changes to the AutoPilot configuration file, as well as any desired optional changes. If your systems were set up with a service that supports remote execution, then you can create a command script to remotely update drivers for all of the systems on the storage net. If Microsoft's RCMD service was installed, for example, a script similar to the following would run remote execution:

```
rcmd \\server1 g:\emulex\autopilot installer\fc\apinstall.exe
if errorlevel 1 goto serverlok
echo AutoPilot reported an error upgrading Server 1.
if not errorlevel 2147483650 goto unsupported
echo Configuration file missing.
goto serverlok
:unsupported
if not errorlevel 2147483649 goto older
echo Unsupported operating system detected.
:older
if not errorlevel 2001 goto none
echo The driver found is the same or older than the existing driver.
```

```
qoto serverlok
:none
if not errorlevel 1248 goto noreport
  echo No Emulex adapter found.
goto serverlok
:noreport
if not errorlevel 110 goto nocfg
  echo Could not open installation report file.
qoto serverlok
:nocfq
if not errorlevel 87 goto badcfg
  echo Invalid configuration file parameters.
  goto serverlok
:badcfq
  if not errorlevel 2 goto serverlok
  echo No appropriate driver found.
server1ok
rcmd \\server2 g:\autopilot\ApInstall
ConfigFileLocation=g:\autopilot\mysetup\apinstall.cfg
if errorlevel 1 goto server2ok
echo AutoPilot reported an error upgrading Server 2.
if not errorlevel 2147483650 goto unsupported
  echo Configuration file missing.
goto server2ok
 :unsupported
if not errorlevel 2147483649 goto older
  echo Unsupported operating system detected.
 :older2
if not errorlevel 2001 goto none2
  echo The driver found is the same or older than the existing driver.
  goto server2ok
:none2
if not errorlevel 1248 goto noreport2
  echo No adapter found.
goto server2ok
:noreport
if not errorlevel 110 goto nocfg2
   echo Could not open installation report file.
goto server2ok
:nocfq2
if not errorlevel 87 goto badcfg2
   echo Invalid configuration file parameters.
  goto server2ok
:badcfg2
  if not errorlevel 2 goto server2ok
  echo No appropriate driver found.
server2ok
```

Appendix E. RoCE Switch Support

Overview

Some switches do not support DCBX, and most DCBX-enabled switches do not fully support RoCE as a protocol. As of today, none of the known switch vendors (Arista, Brocade, Cisco, and Juniper) allow configuring priority for RoCE specific traffic. Additionally, most of the known switch vendors do not support APP TLV of 0x8915 for RoCE ETS bandwidth and PFC configuration.

DCBX-Enabled Switch Connection PFC Mode

Manually enable priority 5 on the switch under a different priority group other than FCOE/ISCSI/NIC priority group.

Notes:

- When an OCe14000-series adapter is connected to a DCBX-enabled switch, the mode shifts from generic pause to PFC mode.
- When an OCe14000-series adapter is connected to a DCBX-disabled switch, it is in generic pause mode.
- In absence of priority 5 on the switch side, the OCe14000-series adapter continues to be configured for RoCE and PFC priority 5. This can result in packet losses, unrecoverable errors or infinite retries for RoCE traffic.

Switch Configuration for PFC Priority 5

Using the documentation provided by your switch vendor, configure your switch for the following:

- Priority pause frames using Priority 5
- MTU size of 4200 or higher
- No-drop policy

Below are the switch configuration steps:

- 1. Create PG 1 as Priority 5 with a no-drop policy for RoCE traffic.
- 2. Assign the appropriate bandwidth to PG 1, for example 90%.
- 3. Create PG 2 (or something different from above which is priority group 1) and assign NIC traffic to it.
- 4. Assign remaining bandwidth to PG 2.
- 5. Enable priority flow control on all ports participating in the cluster and at a global level in the switch.
 - **Note:** Some switches have global and port level settings for flow control and bandwidth allocation. Make sure the PFC flow control setting is performed on all the ports which participate in the cluster.

- 6. Configure a valid VLAN with an ID other than 0 or 1.
- 7. Ensure that Jumbo Frames is enabled, or at minimum set the MTU >= 4200.
- 8. Specify each switch port service policy rather than using the system QoS.

Notes:

- Some switches have jumbo frame size support disabled on the port and global level by default.
- Some switches show the priority for FCoE on the switch itself. Use a policy with zero bandwidth for the FCoE priority.

Host—Client Configuration

For all host and clients participating in the network:

- 1. Create VLAN using the VLAN ID you configured in step 6 above.
- 2. Assign appropriate IP address to the VLAN interface.

Note: Ensure all the traffic is flowing through the vlan interface.

DCBX-Disabled Switch Connection (Generic Pause Mode)

- 1. Host Configuration:
 - a. On the host and peer systems, ensure that Tx pause flow control and Rx pause flow control are enabled on all the ports and interfaces which are RoCE enabled using operating system standard tools.
- 2. Switch Configuration:
 - a. Enable Tx generic pause flow control and Rx generic pause flow control on each port participating in the cluster.
 - b. Enable Jumbo Frames, or set the MTU to at least 4200 or greater.
 - **Note:** Some switches have jumbo frame size support disabled on the port and global level by default.

Examples for Cisco Switch

Sample Class-maps for RoCE on a Cisco Switch

Note: Not all switch settings are shown.

Cisco5548UP2(config)# show class-map

match any

```
Type queuing class-maps
_____
class-map type queuing class-fcoe
match qos-group 1
class-map type queuing class-roce
match qos-group 5
class-map type queuing class-default
match qos-group 0
Type network-qos class-maps
-----
class-map type network-qos class-fcoe
match qos-group 1
class-map type network-qos class-roce
match qos-group 5
class-map type network-qos class-default
match qos-group 0
```

Sample Policy-maps for RoCE on a Cisco Switch

Note: Not all switch settings are shown.

bandwidth percent 90 class type queuing class-default bandwidth percent 10

Sample Port Configuration for RoCE on a Cisco Switch

Note: The Port flow control should be off and the Priority Flow Control should be on Auto. PFC flow is not explicitly displayed on this switch.

```
interface Ethernet1/15
description RoCE configuration
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan 102
spanning-tree port type edge trunk
service-policy type qos input class-rocenofcoe
service-policy type queuing input class-roce90
service-policy type queuing output class-roce90
```

Sample Switch PFC Verification on a Cisco Switch

Ensure that the "Mode" is set to "Auto." and "Operational (Oper)" is "On." Cisco5548UP2(config) # show int eth 1/11 priority-flow-control Port Mode Oper(VL bmap) RxPPP TxPPP Ethernet1/11 Auto On (28) 873 694950

Verifying Switch Configuration in OneCommand Manager

Note: You do not need to configure the OCe14000-series adapter in the OneCommand Manager utility to enable RoCE with Priority Flow Control (PFC).

You can use the OneCommand Manager GUI application or the OneCommand Manager CLI application to verify the switch configuration.

See the *OneCommand™ Manager Application User Manual* for more information on using the OneCommand Manager GUI application to verify the switch configuration.

See the OneCommand[™] Manager Command Line Interface Manual for more information on using the OneCommand Manager CLI application to verify the switch configuration.